

The package **witharrows** for plain-TeX and LaTeX*

F. Pantigny
fpantigny@wanadoo.fr

November 17, 2025

Abstract

The LaTeX package **witharrows** provides environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}` similar to the environments `{aligned}` and `{align}` of **amsmath** but with the possibility to draw arrows on the right side of the alignment. These arrows are usually used to give explanations concerning the mathematical calculus presented.

The package **witharrows** is entirely contained in the file `witharrows.sty`. This file may be put in the current directory or in a `texmf` tree. However, the best is to install **witharrows** with a TeX distribution such as MiKTeX, TeX Live or MacTeX.

In fact, **witharrows** may also be used with plain-TeX and, in that case, the only required file is `witharrows.tex`: see p. 23. In what follows, we describe the LaTeX package.

This package can be used with `xelatex`, `lualatex`, `pdflatex` but also by the classical workflow `latex-dvips-ps2pdf` (or Adobe Distiller). However, the file `witharrows.dtx` of the present documentation should be compiled with *LuaLaTeX*. This package loads the packages `varwidth`, `tikz` and the Tikz libraries `arrows.meta` and `bending`. The final user only has to load the package with the classical instruction: `\usepackage{witharrows}`.

The arrows are drawn with Tikz and that's why **several compilations may be necessary**.¹

This package provides an environment `{WithArrows}` to construct alignments of equations with arrows for the explanations on the right side:

```
$\begin{WithArrows} A &= (a+1)^2 \text{\textbackslash Arrow{we expand}} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 % ----- don't put \\ here \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \text{\textbackslash Arrow{we expand}}$$

The arrow has been drawn with the command `\Arrow` on the row from which it starts. The command `\Arrow` must be used in the second column (the best way is to put it at the end of the second cell of the row as in the previous example).

The environment `{WithArrows}` bears similarities with the environment `{aligned}` of **amsmath** (and **mathtools**). The extension **witharrows** also provides two environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` which are similar to the environments `{align}` and `{align*}` of the package **amsmath**: cf. p. 17.

*This document corresponds to the version 2.9x of **witharrows**, at the date of 2025/11/03.

¹If you use Overleaf, Overleaf will do automatically a number compilations sufficient (by using `latexmk`).

1 Options for the shape of the arrows

The command `\Arrow` has several options. These options can be put between square brackets, before, or after the mandatory argument.

The option `jump` gives the number² of rows the arrow must jump (the default value is, of course, 1).

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
A &= \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \Arrow[jump=2]{we expand} \\
&= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\
&= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= ((a+b)+1)^2 \\ &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\ &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \text{we expand}$$

It's possible to put several arrows starting from the same row.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
A &= \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \Arrow{} \Arrow{} [jump=2] \\
&= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\
&= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= ((a+b)+1)^2 \\ &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\ &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \downarrow$$

The option `xoffset` shifts the arrow to the right (we usually don't want the arrows to be stucked on the text). The initial value of `xoffset` is 3 mm.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
A &= \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \\
\Arrow[xoffset=1cm]{with \texttt{xoffset=1cm}} \\
&= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= ((a+b)+1)^2 \\ &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \downarrow \quad \text{with } \texttt{xoffset=1cm}$$

The arrows are drawn with Tikz. That's why the command `\Arrow` has an option `tikz` which can be used to give to the arrow (in fact, the command `\path` of Tikz) the options proposed by Tikz for such an arrow. The following example gives an thick arrow.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow[tikz=thick]{we expand} \\
&= a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \downarrow \quad \text{we expand}$$

It's also possible to change the arrowheads. For example, we can draw an arrow which goes backwards with the Tikz option `<-`.

²It's not possible to give a non-positive value to `jump`. See below (p. 2) the way to draw an arrow which goes backwards.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \arrow[tikz=<-]{we factorize} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$A = (a+1)^2 \quad \uparrow \text{we factorize}$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1$$

It's also possible to suppress both tips of the arrow with the Tikz option “-”.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \arrow[tikz=-]{very classical} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$A = (a+1)^2 \quad \uparrow \text{very classical}$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1$$

In order to have straight arrows instead of curved ones, we must use the Tikz option “`bend left = 0`”.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \arrow[tikz={bend left=0}]{we expand} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$A = (a+1)^2 \quad \downarrow \text{we expand}$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1$$

In fact, it's possible to change more drastically the shape or the arrows with the option `tikz-code` (presented p. 23).

It's possible to use the Tikz option “`text width`” to control the width of the text associated to the arrow.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \\ &\Arrow[jump=2,tikz={text width=5.3cm}]{We have done...} \\ &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\ &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$A = ((a+b)+1)^2 \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{We have done a two-stages expansion} \\ \text{but it would have been clever to} \\ \text{expand with the multinomial theorem.} \end{array} \right\}$$

$$= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1$$

$$= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1$$

In the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`, there is an option `wrap-lines`. With this option, the lines of the labels are automatically wrapped on the right: see p. 20.

If we want to change the font of the text associated to the arrow, we can, of course, put a command like `\bfseries`, `\large` or `\sffamily` at the beginning of the text. But, by default, the texts are composed with a combination of `\small` and `\itshape`. When adding `\bfseries` at the beginning of the text, we won't suppress the `\small` and the `\itshape` and we will consequently have a text in a bold, italic and small font.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \arrow{\bfseries we expand} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \text{we expand}$$

It's possible to put commands \\ in the text to force new lines³. However, if we put a \\ , a command of font placed in the beginning of the text will have effect only until the first command \\ (like in an environment `{tabular}`). That's why Tikz provides an option `font` to modify the font of the whole text. Nevertheless, if we use the option `tikz={font={\bfseries}}`, the default specification of `\small` and `\itshape` will be overwritten.

```
$\begin{WithArrows} A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow[tikz={font=\bfseries}]{we expand} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \text{we expand}$$

If we want exactly the same result as previously, we have to give to the option `font` the value `\itshape\small\bfseries`.

The options can be given directly between square brackets to the environment `{WithArrows}`. There must be no space between the `\begin{WithArrows}` and the opening bracket (`[`) of the options of the environment. Such options apply to all the arrows of the environment.⁴

```
\begin{WithArrows}[tikz=blue]
A & = \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \Arrow{first expansion.} \\
& = (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) +1 \Arrow{second expansion.} \\
& = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b +1
\end{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= ((a+b) + 1)^2 \\
 &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\
 &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1
 \end{aligned}
 \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{first expansion.} \\ \text{second expansion.} \end{array}$$

The environment `{WithArrows}` has an option `displaystyle`. With this option, all the elements are composed in `\displaystyle` (like in an environment `{aligned}` of `amsmath`).

Without the option `displaystyle`:

```

\$begin{WithArrows}
\int_0^1 (x+1)^2 dx
& = \int_0^1 (x^2+2x+1) dx
\Arrow{linearity of integration} & \\
& = \int_0^1 x^2 dx + 2 \int_0^1 x dx + \int_0^1 1 dx \\
& = \frac{1}{3} + 2\frac{1}{2} + 1 \\
& = \frac{7}{3}
\end{WithArrows}$

```

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_0^1 (x+1)^2 dx &= \int_0^1 (x^2 + 2x + 1) dx \\
 &= \int_0^1 x^2 dx + 2 \int_0^1 x dx + \int_0^1 1 dx \quad \checkmark \text{linearity of integration} \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} + 2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} + 1 \\
 &= \frac{7}{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

³By default, this is not possible in a Tikz node. However, in `witharrows`, the nodes are created with the option `align=left`, and, thus, it becomes possible.

⁴They also apply to the nested environments `{WithArrows}` (with the logical exceptions of `interline`, `code-before` and `code-after`).

The same example with the option `displaystyle`:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_0^1 (x+1)^2 dx &= \int_0^1 (x^2 + 2x + 1) dx \\
 &= \int_0^1 x^2 dx + 2 \int_0^1 x dx + \int_0^1 1 dx \quad \text{by linearity of integration} \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} + 2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} + 1 \\
 &= \frac{7}{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

Almost all the options can also be set at the document level with the command `\WithArrowsOptions`. In this case, the scope of the declarations is the current TeX group (these declarations are “semi-global”). For example, if we want all the environments `{WithArrows}` composed in `\displaystyle` with blue arrows, we can write `\WithArrowsOptions{displaystyle,tikz=blue}`.⁵

```

\WithArrowsOptions{displaystyle,tikz=blue}
$\begin{WithArrows}
\sum_{i=1}^n (x_{i+1})^2
& = \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i^2 + 2x_i + 1) \Arrow{by linearity}\\
& = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + 2\sum_{i=1}^n x_i + n
\end{WithArrows}$

```

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i + 1)^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i^2 + 2x_i + 1) \\
 &= \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + 2 \sum_{i=1}^n x_i + n \quad \text{by linearity}
 \end{aligned}$$

The command `\Arrow` is recognized only in the environments `{WithArrows}`. If we have a command `\Arrow` previously defined, it's possible to go on using it outside the environments `{WithArrows}`. However, a previously defined command `\Arrow` may still be useful in an environment `{WithArrows}`. If we want to use it in such an environment, it's possible to change the name of the command `\Arrow` of the package `witharrows`: there is an option `command-name` for this purpose. The new name of the command must be given to the option *without* the leading backslash.

```

\NewDocumentCommand {\Arrow} {} {\longmapsto}
$\begin{WithArrows}[\text{command-name=Explanation}]
f & = \bigl(x \Arrow (x+1)^2\bigr) \\
& \Explanation{we work directly on functions}\\
& = \bigl(x \Arrow x^2+2x+1\bigr)
\end{WithArrows}$

```

$$\begin{aligned}
 f &= (x \longrightarrow (x+1)^2) \\
 &= (x \longrightarrow x^2 + 2x + 1) \quad \text{we work directly on functions}
 \end{aligned}$$

The environment `{WithArrows}` provides also two options `code-before` and `code-after` for LaTeX code that will be executed at the beginning and at the end of the environment. These options are not designed to be hooks (they are available only at the environment level and they do not apply to the nested environments).

```

$\begin{WithArrows}[\text{code-before} = \color{blue}]
A & = (a+b)^2 \Arrow{\text{we expand}}\\
& = a^2 + 2ab + b^2
\end{WithArrows}$

```

⁵It's also possible to configure `witharrows` by modifying the Tikz style `WithArrows/arrow` which is the style used by `witharrows` when drawing an arrow. For example, to have the labels in blue with roman (upright) types, one can use the following instruction: `\tikzset{WithArrows/arrow/.append style = {blue,font = {}}}`.

$$A = (a + b)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \quad \text{we expand}$$

Special commands are available in `code-after`: a command `\WithArrowsNbLines` which gives the number of lines (=rows) of the current environment (this is a command and not a counter), a special form of the command `\Arrow` and the command `\MultiArrow`: the latter two commands are described in the section concerning the nested environments, p. 13.

2 Numbers of columns

So far, we have used the environment `{WithArrows}` with two columns. However, it's possible to use the environment with an arbitrary number of columns with the option `format`. The value given to this option is like the preamble of an environment `{array}`, that is to say a sequence of letters `r`, `c` and `l`, but also `R`, `C` and `L`.

The letters `R`, `C` and `L` add empty groups `{}` which provide correct spaces when these columns contain symbols with the type `\mathrel` (such as `=`, `\leq` , etc.) or `\mathbin` (such as `+`, `\times` , etc.). This system is inspired by the environment `{IEEEeqnarray}` of the package `IEETrantools`.

The initial value of the parameter `format` is, in fact, `rL`.

For exemple, if we want only one column left-aligned, we use the option `format=1`.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[\text{format} = 1]
```

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &\geq g(x) && \text{by squaring both sides} \\ f(x)^2 &\geq g(x)^2 && \text{by moving to left side} \\ f(x)^2 - g(x)^2 &\geq 0 && \end{aligned}$$

In the following example, we use five columns all centered (the environment `{DispWithArrows*}` is presented p. 17).

```
\begin{DispWithArrows*}[\text{format} = cCcCc,
                      \text{wrap-lines},
                      \text{interline}=1mm]
k & \leq & t & \leq & k+1 \\
& \frac{1}{k+1} & \leq & \frac{1}{t} & \leq \frac{1}{k} \\
& \int_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{t} & \leq & \int_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{t} & \leq \int_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{k} \\
& \frac{1}{k+1} & \leq & \ln(k+1) - \ln(k) & \leq \frac{1}{k}
\end{DispWithArrows*}
```

$$\begin{aligned} k &\leq t &\leq k+1 \\ \frac{1}{k+1} &\leq \frac{1}{t} &\leq \frac{1}{k} \\ \int_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{t} &\leq \int_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{t} &\leq \int_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{k} &\quad \text{we can integrate the inequalities since } k \leq k+1 \\ \frac{1}{k+1} &\leq \ln(k+1) - \ln(k) &\leq \frac{1}{k} \end{aligned}$$

3 Precise positioning of the arrows

The environment `{WithArrows}` defines, during the composition of the array, two series of nodes materialized in red in the following example.⁶

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^0 \ln\left(1 + \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - u\right)\right)(-du) \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(1 + \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - u\right)\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(1 + \frac{1 - \tan u}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(\frac{1 + \tan u + 1 - \tan u}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(\frac{2}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} (\ln 2 - \ln(1 + \tan u)) du \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{4} \ln 2 - \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln(1 + \tan u) du \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{4} \ln 2 - I
 \end{aligned}$$

The nodes of the left are at the end of each line of text. These nodes will be called *left nodes*. The nodes of the right side are aligned vertically on the right side of the array. These nodes will be called *right nodes*.

By default, the arrows use the right nodes. We will say that they are in `rr` mode (*r* for *right*). These arrows are vertical (we will say that an arrow is *vertical* when its two ends have the same abscissa).

However, it's possible to use the left nodes, or a combination of left and right nodes, with one of the options `lr`, `rl` and `ll` (*l* for *left*). Those arrows are, usually, not vertical.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Therefore } I &= \int_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^0 \ln\left(1 + \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - u\right)\right)(-du) \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(1 + \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - u\right)\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(1 + \frac{1 - \tan u}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(\frac{1 + \tan u + 1 - \tan u}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(\frac{2}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
 &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} (\ln 2 - \ln(1 + \tan u)) du \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{4} \ln 2 - \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln(1 + \tan u) du \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{4} \ln 2 - I
 \end{aligned}$$

This arrow uses the lr option.

This arrow uses a ll option and a jump equal to 2

There is also an option called `i` (*i* for *intermediate*). With this option, the arrow is vertical and at the leftmost position.

⁶The option `show-nodes` can be used to materialize the nodes. The nodes are in fact Tikz nodes of shape “rectangle”, but with zero width. An arrow between two nodes starts at the *south* anchor of the first node and arrives at the *north* anchor of the second node.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
(a+b)(a+ib)(a-b)(a-ib)
& = (a+b)(a-b)\cdot(a+ib)(a-ib) \\
& = (a^2-b^2)(a^2+b^2) \Arrow[i]{because $(x-y)(x+y)=x^2-y^2$} \\
& = a^4-b^4
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}(a+b)(a+ib)(a-b)(a-ib) &= (a+b)(a-b) \cdot (a+ib)(a-ib) \\ &= (a^2-b^2)(a^2+b^2) \\ &= a^4-b^4\end{aligned}\quad \left.\right\} \text{because } (x-y)(x+y) = x^2 - y^2$$

The environment `{WithArrows}` gives also a `group` option. With this option, *all* the arrows of the environment are grouped on a same vertical line and at a leftmost position.

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [displaystyle,group]
2xy'-3y=\sqrt{x}
&\Longleftarrow 2x(K'y_0+Ky'_0)-3Ky_0=\sqrt{x} \\
&\Longleftarrow 2xK'y_0+K(2xy'_0-3y_0)=\sqrt{x} \\
&\Longleftarrow 2xK'y_0=\sqrt{x} \\
&\Longleftarrow 2xK'x^{\frac{3}{2}}=x^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad \left.\right\} \text{we replace } y_0 \text{ by its value} \\
&\Longleftarrow K'=\frac{1}{2x^2} \quad \left.\right\} \text{simplification of the } x \\
&\Longleftarrow K=-\frac{1}{2x} \quad \left.\right\} \text{antiderivation}
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}2xy' - 3y &= \sqrt{x} \iff 2x(K'y_0 + Ky'_0) - 3Ky_0 = \sqrt{x} \\ &\iff 2xK'y_0 + K(2xy'_0 - 3y_0) = \sqrt{x} \\ &\iff 2xK'y_0 = \sqrt{x} \\ &\iff 2xK'x^{\frac{3}{2}} = x^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad \left.\right\} \text{we replace } y_0 \text{ by its value} \\ &\iff K' = \frac{1}{2x^2} \quad \left.\right\} \text{simplification of the } x \\ &\iff K = -\frac{1}{2x} \quad \left.\right\} \text{antiderivation}\end{aligned}$$

The environment `{WithArrows}` gives also a `groups` option (with a *s* in the name). With this option, the arrows are divided into several “groups”. Each group is a set of connected⁷ arrows. All the arrows of a given group are grouped on a same vertical line and at a leftmost position.

$$\begin{aligned}A &= B \\ &= C + D \quad \left.\right\} \text{one} \\ &= D' \quad \left.\right\} \text{two} \\ &= E + F + G + H + I \\ &= K + L + M \quad \left.\right\} \text{three} \\ &= N \quad \left.\right\} \text{four} \\ &= O\end{aligned}$$

In an environment which uses the option `group` or the option `groups`, it's still possible to give an option of position (`ll`, `lr`, `rl`, `rr` or `i`) to an individual arrow⁸. Such arrow will be drawn irrespective of the groups. It's also possible to start a new group by applying the option `new-group` to an given arrow.

If desired, the option `group` or the option `groups` can be given to the command `\WithArrowsOptions` so that it will become the default value. In this case, it's still possible to come back to the default behaviour for a given environment `{WithArrows}` with the option `rr`: `\begin{WithArrows}[rr]`

⁷More precisely: for each arrow a , we note $i(a)$ the number of its initial row and $f(a)$ the number of its final row; for two arrows a and b , we say that $a \sim b$ when $[i(a), f(a)] \cap [i(b), f(b)] \neq \emptyset$; the groups are the equivalence classes of the transitive closure of \sim .

⁸Such arrow will be called *independent* in the technical documentation

In the following example, we have used the option `groups` for the environment and the option `new-group` for the last arrow (that's why the last arrow is not aligned with the others).

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=0}^n \frac{\cos kx}{\cos^k x} &= \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{\Re(e^{ikx})}{(\cos x)^k} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^n \Re\left(\frac{e^{ikx}}{(\cos x)^k}\right) \\
&= \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^n \left(\frac{e^{ix}}{\cos x}\right)^k\right) \\
&= \Re\left(\frac{1 - \left(\frac{e^{ix}}{\cos x}\right)^{n+1}}{1 - \frac{e^{ix}}{\cos x}}\right) \\
&= \Re\left(\frac{1 - \frac{e^{i(n+1)x}}{\cos^{n+1} x}}{1 - \frac{e^{ix}}{\cos x}}\right) \\
&= \Re\left(\frac{\cos^{n+1} x - e^{i(n+1)x}}{\cos^n x - e^{ix}}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^n x} \Re\left(\frac{\cos^{n+1} x - e^{i(n+1)x}}{\cos x - e^{ix}}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^n x} \Re\left(\frac{\cos^{n+1} x - (\cos(n+1)x + i \sin(n+1)x)}{\cos x - (\cos x + i \sin x)}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^n x} \Re\left(\frac{(\cos^{n+1} x - \cos(n+1)x) - i \sin(n+1)x}{-i \sin x}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^n x} \cdot \frac{\sin(n+1)x}{\sin x}
\end{aligned}$$

(cos x)^k is real
 $\Re(z + z') = \Re(z) + \Re(z')$
sum of terms of a geometric progression
algebraic calculation
reduction to common denominator
 $\Re(kz) = k \cdot \Re(z)$ if k is real
algebraic form of the complexes

4 The option “o” for individual arrows

Let's consider, in a given environment, two arrows called a and b . We will note i_a and i_b the numbers of the initial lines of a et b dans f_a and f_b the numbers of the final lines. Of course, we have $i_a \leq f_a$ and $i_b \leq f_b$

We will say that the arrow a *covers* the arrow b when $i_a \leq i_b \leq f_b \leq f_a$. We will also say that the arrow a is *over* the arrow b .

$$\begin{aligned} A &= B \\ &= C \\ &= D \\ &= E \end{aligned}$$

In the exemple on the right, the red arrow covers the blue one.

On the local level, there exists a key `o`. This key is available only when the option `group` or the option `groups` is in force (cf. p. 8).

An arrow of type o is drawn with an horizontal shift (such as those set by `xoffset`) automatically computed by taking into account the arrows covered by our arrow.⁹

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[groups]
A & = B \Arrow{one}\Arrow[\textcolor{blue}{o},jump=3]{direct} \\
& = C + C \Arrow{two} \\
& = D + D + D \Arrow{three} \\
& = E + E \\
& = F + F
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= B \\
 &= C + C \\
 &= D + D + D \\
 &= E + E \\
 &= F + F
 \end{aligned}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{c}
 \downarrow \text{one} \\
 \downarrow \text{two} \\
 \downarrow \text{three}
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \downarrow \text{direct}$$

⁹ Among the covered arrows, the independent ones (that is to say with an explicit key `rr`, `ll`, `lr`, `rl`, `i`, `up` or `down`) are not taken into account in the computation of the value of `xoffset`.

Arrows of type `o` may themselves be covered by other arrows of type `o`.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[groups]
A & = B \Arrow{one}\Arrow[o,jump=2]{two}\Arrow[o,jump=3]{three} \\
& = C \\
& = D \\
& = E + E + E + E + E + E + E
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= B \\ &= C \\ &= D \\ &= E + E + E + E + E + E + E \end{aligned} \quad \begin{array}{c} \downarrow one \\ \downarrow two \\ \downarrow three \end{array}$$

The horizontal space between an arrow of type `o` and the arrows immediately covered is fixed by the dimension `xoffset-for-o-arrows` which can be set with the command `\WithArrowsOptions` (initial value: 2 mm).

5 The options “up” and “down” for individual arrows

At the local level, there are also two options for individual arrows, called `up` and `down`. The following example illustrates these types of arrows:

```
\(\begin{WithArrows}
A &= B
\Arrow[up]{an arrow of type up} \\
&= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \\
&= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C
\Arrow[down]{an arrow of type down} \\
&= E + E
\end{WithArrows}\)
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= B \quad \overbrace{\qquad\qquad\qquad}^{an\ arrow\ of\ type\ up} \\ &= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \quad \downarrow \\ &= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \\ &= E + E \quad \underbrace{\qquad\qquad\qquad}_{an\ arrow\ of\ type\ down} \end{aligned}$$

The options `up` and `down` require the Tikz library `calc`. If it has not been previously loaded by the user, an error will be raised.

In fact, the options `up` and `down` may be used with a value which is a list of couples key-value.

- The key `radius` is the radius of the rounded corner of the arrow.¹⁰
- The key `width` is the width of the (horizontal part of) the arrow:
 - with the value `max`, the width of the arrow is adjusted with respect of the position of the nodes (that's the behaviour by default of the arrows `up` and `down` as shown in the previous example);

¹⁰The initial value of this parameter is 4 pt, which is the default value of the “rounded corners” of Tikz.

- with a numerical value, the width of the arrow is directly fixed to that numerical value;
- with the value `min`, the width of the arrow is adjusted with respect to the contents of the label of the arrow.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= B \\ &= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \end{aligned}$$

```
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= B \\ &= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \end{aligned} \overbrace{\hspace{2cm}}^{we\ try} \downarrow$$

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= B \\ &= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \end{aligned}$$

```
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= B \\ &= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \end{aligned} \overbrace{\hspace{2cm}}^{we\ try} \downarrow$$

The options relative to the arrows `up` and `down` can be fixed at the global or environment level with the key `up-and-down`. This key may also be used as prefix as illustrated now.

```
\WithArrowsOptions{up-and-down/width=min}
```

6 Comparison with the environment {aligned}

{WithArrows} bears similarities with the environment `{aligned}` of the extension `amsmath`. These are only similarities because {WithArrows} has not been written upon the environment `{aligned}`.¹¹

As in the environments of `amsmath`, it's possible to change the spacing between two given rows with the option of the command `\backslash` of end of line (it's also possible to use `\backslash*` but it has exactly the same effect as `\backslash` since an environment {WithArrows} is always unbreakable). This option is designed to be used with positive values only.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned}$$

```
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned} \left.\right\}^{we\ expand}$$

¹¹In fact, it's possible to use the package `witharrows` without the package `amsmath`.

In the environments of `amsmath` (or `mathtools`), the spacing between rows is fixed by a parameter called `\jot` (it's a dimension and not a skip). That's also the case for the environment `{WithArrows}`. An option `jot` has been given to the environment `{WithArrows}` in order to change the value of this parameter `\jot` for a given environment.¹²

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [displaystyle, jot=2ex]
F & = \frac{1}{2}G \quad \backslash Arrow{we expand}\\
& = H + \frac{1}{2}K \backslash Arrow{we go on}\\
& = K
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} F &= \frac{1}{2}G \\ &= H + \frac{1}{2}K \\ &= K \end{aligned} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{we expand} \\ \text{we go on} \end{array}$$

However, this new value of `\jot` will also be used in other alignments included in the environment `{WithArrows}`:

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [jot=2ex]
\varphi(x,y) = 0 & \& \Leftrightarrow (x+y)^2 + (x+2y)^2 = 0 \\
\backslash Arrow{\$x\$ and \$y\$ are real}\\
& \& \Leftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} x+y = 0 \\ x+2y = 0 \end{array} \right. \quad \backslash right.
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+y)^2 + (x+2y)^2 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} x+y = 0 \\ x+2y = 0 \end{array} \right. \quad \text{x and y are real} \end{aligned}$$

Maybe this doesn't correspond to the desired outcome. That's why an option `interline` is proposed. It's possible to use a skip (=glue) for this option.

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [interline=2ex]
\varphi(x,y) = 0 & \& \Leftrightarrow (x+y)^2 + (x+2y)^2 = 0 \\
\backslash Arrow{\$x\$ and \$y\$ are real}\\
& \& \Leftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} x+y = 0 \\ x+2y = 0 \end{array} \right. \quad \backslash right.
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+y)^2 + (x+2y)^2 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} x+y = 0 \\ x+2y = 0 \end{array} \right. \quad \text{x and y are real} \end{aligned}$$

¹²It's also possible to change `\jot` with the environment `{spreadlines}` of `mathtools`.

Like the environment `{aligned}`, `{WithArrows}` has an option of placement which can assume the values `t`, `c` or `b`. However, the initial value is not `c` but `t`. If desired, it's possible to have the `c` value as the default with the command `\WithArrowsOptions{c}` at the beginning of the document.

```
So\enskip
$ \begin{WithArrows}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\text{So } A = (a + 1)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{we expand} \\ \downarrow \end{array}$$

The value `c` may be useful, for example, if we want to add curly braces:

```
Let's set\enskip \$\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\begin{WithArrows}[c]
f(x) & = 3x^3+2x^2-x+4 \\
\Arrow[tikz=-]{both are polynomials}\\
g(x) & = 5x^2-5x+6
\end{WithArrows}
\right.\$
```

$$\text{Let's set } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} f(x) = 3x^3 + 2x^2 - x + 4 \\ g(x) = 5x^2 - 5x + 6 \end{array} \right. \text{ both are polynomials}$$

Unlike `{aligned}`, the environment `{WithArrows}` uses `\textstyle` by default.
Once again, it's possible to change this behaviour with `\WithArrowsOptions`:

`\WithArrowsOptions{displaystyle}`.

The following example is composed with `{aligned}`:

$$\left\{ \begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i + 1)^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i^2 + 2x_i + 1) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + 2 \sum_{i=1}^n x_i + n \end{aligned} \right.$$

The following is composed with `{WithArrows}[c,displaystyle]`. The results are strictly identical.

$$\left\{ \begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i + 1)^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i^2 + 2x_i + 1) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + 2 \sum_{i=1}^n x_i + n \end{aligned} \right.$$

7 Arrows in nested environments

The environments `{WithArrows}` can be nested. In this case, the options given to the encompassing environment applies also to the inner ones (with logical exceptions for `interline`, `code-before` and `code-after`). The command `\Arrow` can be used as usual in each environment `{WithArrows}`.

```

$ \begin{WithArrows}
\varphi(x,y)=0
& \Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2+(2x+4y)^2 = 0 \Arrow{the numbers are real} \\
& \Leftrightarrow
\left. \begin{aligned} & x+2y &= 0 \\ & 2x+4y &= 0 \end{aligned} \right\} \begin{aligned} & \text{\begin{WithArrows}[c]} \\ & x+2y &= 0 \text{\Arrow[tikz=-]{the same equation}} \\ & x+2y &= 0 \end{aligned} \end{aligned} \right. \begin{aligned} & \text{\end{WithArrows}} \\ & \Leftrightarrow x+2y=0 \end{aligned} \right. \begin{aligned} & \text{\end{WithArrows}} \\
\end{WithArrows} $

```

$$\begin{aligned}
\varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2 + (2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x+2y = 0 \\ 2x+4y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{the numbers are real} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x+2y = 0 \\ x+2y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{the same equation} \\
&\Leftrightarrow x+2y = 0
\end{aligned}$$

However, one may want to draw an arrow between rows that are not in the same environment. For example, one may want to draw the following arrow :

$$\begin{aligned}
\varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2 + (2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x+2y = 0 \\ 2x+4y = 0 \end{cases} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x+2y = 0 \\ x+2y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{division by 2} \\
&\Leftrightarrow x+2y = 0
\end{aligned}$$

Such a construction is possible by using `\Arrow` in the `code-after` option. Indeed, in `code-after`, a special version of `\Arrow` is available (we will call it “`\Arrow` in `code-after`”).

A command `\Arrow` in `code-after` takes three arguments :

- a specification of the start row of the arrow ;
- a specification of the end row of the arrow ;
- the label of the arrow.

As usual, it's also possible to give options within square brackets before or after the three arguments. However, these options are limited (see below).

The specification of the row is constructed with the position of the concerned environment in the nesting tree, followed (after an hyphen) by the number of that row.

In the previous example, there are two environments `{WithArrows}` nested in the main environment `{WithArrows}`.

$$\begin{aligned}
\varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2 + (2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x+2y = 0 \\ 2x+4y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{environment number 1} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x+2y = 0 \\ x+2y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{environment number 2} \\
&\Leftrightarrow x+2y = 0
\end{aligned}$$

The arrow we want to draw starts in the row 2 of the sub-environment number 1 (and therefore, the specification is 1-2) and ends in the row 2 of the sub-environment number 2 (and therefore, the specification is 2-2). We can draw the arrow with the following command `\Arrow` in `code-after` :

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [code-after = \Arrow{1-2}{2-2}{division by $2$}]
\varphi(x,y)=0
& \Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2+(2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\
.....
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x + 2y)^2 + (2x + 4y)^2 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ 2x + 4y = 0 \end{cases} \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ x + 2y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{division by 2} \\ &\Leftrightarrow x + 2y = 0\end{aligned}$$

The options allowed for a command `\Arrow` in `code-after` are: `ll`, `lr`, `rl`, `rr`, `v`, `xoffset`, `tikz` and `tikz-code`. Except `v`, which is specific to `\Arrow` in `code-after`, all these options have their usual meaning.

With the option `v`, the arrow drawn is vertical to an abscissa computed with the start row and the end row only : the intermediate lines are not taken into account unlike with the option `i`. Currently, the option `i` is not available for the command `\Arrow` in `code-after`. However, it's always possible to translate an arrow with `xoffset` (or `xshift` of Tikz).

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [code-after=\Arrow[v]{1-2}{2-2}{division by $2$}]
\varphi(x,y)=0
& \Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2+(2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\
.....
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x + 2y)^2 + (2x + 4y)^2 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ 2x + 4y = 0 \end{cases} \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ x + 2y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{division by 2} \\ &\Leftrightarrow x + 2y = 0\end{aligned}$$

The package `witharrows` provides also another command available only in `code-after`: the command `\MultiArrow`. This command draws a “rak”. The list of the rows of the environment concerned by this rak are given in the first argument of the command `\MultiArrow`. This list is given with the syntax of the list in a `\foreach` command of pgffor.

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [tikz = rounded corners,
code-after = {\MultiArrow{1,...,4}{text}} ]
A & = B \\
& = C \\
& = D \\
& = E \\
& = F
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{array}{l} A = B \\ = C \\ = D \\ = E \\ = F \end{array} \quad \leftarrow \quad \text{text}$$

As of now, there is no option available for the command `\MultiArrow` (maybe in a future release).

8 Arrows from outside environments {WithArrows}

If someone wants to draw arrows from outside the environments `\{WithArrows\}`, he can use the Tikz nodes created in the environments.

The Tikz name of a node created by `witharrows` is prefixed by `wa-`. Then, we have a list of numbers which give the position in the nesting tree and the row number in the environment. At the end, we have the suffix `l` for a “left node” and `r` for a “right node”.

For illustrative purposes, we give an example of nested environments `{WithArrows}`, and, for each “right node”, the name of that node.¹³

The package `witharrows` provides some tools facilitating the use of these nodes:

- the command `\WithArrowsLastEnv` gives the number of the last environment of level 0 (*i.e.* which is not included in another environment of the package `witharrows`);
 - a name can be given to a given environment with the option `name` and, in this case, the nodes created in the environment will have aliases constructed with this name;
 - the Tikz style `WithArrows/arrow` is the style used by `witharrows` when drawing an arrow¹⁴;
 - the Tikz style `WithArrows/arrow/tips` is the style for the tip of the arrow (loaded by `WithArrows/arrow`).

For example, we can draw an arrow from `wa-45-2-1-2-r.south` to `wa-45-3-2-r.north` with the following Tikz command.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}[remember picture,overlay]
\draw [WithArrows/arrow]
    ([xshift=3mm]wa-\WithArrowsLastEnv-2-1-2-r.south)
    to ([xshift=3mm]wa-\WithArrowsLastEnv-3-2-r.north) ;
\end{tikzpicture}
```

¹³There is an option `show-node-names` to show the names of these nodes.

¹⁴More precisely, this style is given to the Tikz option “`every path`” before drawing the arrow with the code of the option `tikz-code`. This style is modified (in TeX scopes) by the option `tikz` of `witharrows`.

$$\begin{aligned}
A &\triangleleft B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B \\
&\triangleleft \begin{cases} C \triangleleft D \\ E \triangleleft F \end{cases} \\
&\triangleleft \begin{cases} G \triangleleft H + H + H + H + H + H + H \\ I \triangleleft \begin{cases} J \triangleleft K \\ L \triangleleft M \end{cases} \end{cases} \\
&\triangleleft \begin{cases} N \triangleleft O \\ P \triangleleft Q \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

In this case, it would be easier to use a command `\Arrow` in `code-after` but this is an example to explain how the Tikz nodes created by `witharrows` can be used.

In the following example, we create two environments `{WithArrows}` named “first” and “second” and we draw a line between a node of the first and a node of the second.

```

$\begin{aligned}
\begin{WithArrows}[first]
A &= B \\
&= C
\end{WithArrows} \\[1ex]
\begin{WithArrows}[second]
A' &= B' \\
&= C'
\end{WithArrows} \\[1ex]
\begin{tikzpicture}[remember picture,overlay]
\draw [WithArrows/arrow]
([xshift=3mm]first-1-r.south)
to ([xshift=3mm]second-1-r.north) ;
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{aligned}$

```

$$\begin{array}{c}
A = B \\
= C \\
A' = B' \\
= C'
\end{array}$$

9 The environment `{DispWithArrows}`

As previously said, the environment `{WithArrows}` bears similarities with the environment `{aligned}` of `amsmath` (and `mathtools`). This extension also provides an environment `{DispWithArrows}` which is similar to the environments `{align}` and `{flalign}` of `amsmath`.

The environment `{DispWithArrows}` must be used *outside* math mode. Like `{align}`, it should be used in horizontal mode.

```

$\begin{aligned}
\begin{DispWithArrows}
A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
&= a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{DispWithArrows}
\end{aligned}$

```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad \quad \quad (1)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \quad \quad (2)$$

It's possible to use the command `\notag` (or `\nonumber`) to suppress a tag.

It's possible to use the command `\tag` to put a special tag (e.g. \star).

It's also possible to put a label to the line of an equation with the command `\label`.

These commands must be in the second column of the environment.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \notag \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1 \tag{$\star$} \label{my-equation}
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad \quad \quad (1)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \quad \quad (2)$$

A link to the equation (\star) .¹⁵

If `amsmath` (or `mathtools`) is loaded, it's also possible to use `\tag*` which, as in `amsmath`, typesets the tag without the parentheses. For example, it's possible to use it to put the symbol `\square` of `amssymb`. This symbol is often used to mark the end of a proof.¹⁶

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \notag \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1 \tag*{$\square$}
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad \quad \quad (1)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \quad \quad (2)$$

□

It's also possible to suppress all the autogenerated numbers with the boolean option `notag` (or `nonumber`), at the global or environment level. There is also an environment `{DispWithArrows*}` which suppresses all these numbers.¹⁷

```
\begin{DispWithArrows*}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{DispWithArrows*}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad \quad \quad (1)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \quad \quad (2)$$

In fact, there is also another option `tagged-lines` which can be used to control the lines that will be tagged. The value of this option is a list of the numbers of the lines that must to be tagged. For example, with the option `tagged-lines = {first,3,last}`, only the first, the third and the last line of the environment will be tagged. There is also the special value `all` which means that all the lines will be tagged.

¹⁵In this document, the references have been customized with `\labelformat{equation}{(#1)}` in the preamble.

¹⁶Notice that the environment `{DispWithArrows}` is compatible with the command `\qedhere` of `amsthm`.

¹⁷Even in this case, it's possible to put a "manual tag" with the command `\tag`.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}[tagged-lines = last]
A & = A_1 \Arrow{first stage} \\
& = A_2 \Arrow{second stage} \\
& = A_3
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= A_1 \\ &= A_2 \\ &= A_3 \end{aligned} \quad \begin{array}{l} \downarrow \text{first stage} \\ \downarrow \text{second stage} \end{array} \quad (3)$$

With the option `fleqn`, the environment is composed flush left (in a way similar to the option `fleqn` of the standard classes of LaTeX). In this case, the left margin can be controlled with the option `mathindent` (with a name inspired by the parameter `\mathindent` of standard LaTeX. The initial value of this parameter is 25 pt. It's possible to use as value for that key a *skip* (=glue).

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}[fleqn,mathindent = 1cm]
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad (4)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \downarrow \text{we expand} \quad (5)$$

Remark: By design, the option `fleqn` of `witharrows` is independent of the option `fleqn` of LaTeX. Indeed, since the environments of `witharrows` are meant to be used with arrows on the right side, the user may want to use `witharrows` with the option `fleqn` (in order to have more space on the right of the equations for the arrows) while still centering the classical equations.

If the option `leqno` is used as a class option, the labels will be composed on the left also for the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`.¹⁸

If the package `amsmath` is loaded, it's possible to use the command `\intertext` in the environments `{DispWithArrows}`. It's also possible to use the environment `{subequations}`. However, there is, for the environments `{DispWithArrows}`, an option `subequations` to encapsulate the environment in an environment `{subequations}`.

In the following example, the key `{subequations}` is fixed by the command `\WithArrowsOptions`. Each environment `{DispWithArrows}` will be subnumerated (in the scope of `\WithArrowsOptions`)

```
\WithArrowsOptions{subequations}
First environment.
\begin{DispWithArrows}
A & = B \\
& = C
\end{DispWithArrows}
Second environment.
\begin{DispWithArrows}
D & = E \\
& = F
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

¹⁸The package `amsmath` has an option `leqno` but `witharrows`, of course, is not aware of that option: `witharrows` only checks the option `leqno` of the document class.

First environment.

$$A = B \quad (6a)$$

$$= C \quad (6b)$$

Second environment.

$$D = E \quad (7a)$$

$$= F \quad (7b)$$

If there is not enough space to put the tag at the end of a line, there is no automatic positioning of the label on the next line (as in the environments of `amsmath`). However, in `{DispWithArrows}`, the user can use the command `\tag{nextline}` to manually require the composition of the tag on the following line.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}[displaystyle]
S_{2(p+1)} \\
&=\sum_{k=1}^{2(p+1)} (-1)^k k^2 \\
&\quad +(-1)^{2p+1}(2p+1)^2+(-1)^{2p+2}(2p+2)^2 \tag{nextline} \\
&= S_{2p}-(2p+1)^2+(2p+2)^2 \\
&=p(2p+1)-(2p+1)^2+(2p+2)^2 \\
&= 2p^2+5p+3
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$S_{2(p+1)} = \sum_{k=1}^{2(p+1)} (-1)^k k^2 \quad (8)$$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^{2p} (-1)^k k^2 + (-1)^{2p+1}(2p+1)^2 + (-1)^{2p+2}(2p+2)^2 \quad (9)$$

$$= S_{2p} - (2p+1)^2 + (2p+2)^2 \quad (10)$$

$$= 2p^2 + p - 4p^2 - 4p - 1 + 4p^2 + 8p + 4 \quad (11)$$

$$= 2p^2 + 5p + 3 \quad (12)$$

The environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` provide an option `wrap-lines`. With this option, the lines of the labels are automatically wrapped on the right.²

```
\begin{DispWithArrows*}[displaystyle,wrap-lines]
S_n \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \operatorname{Re} \left( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^k \right) \\
\Arrow{sum of terms of a geometric progression of ratio $e^{i \frac{2\pi}{n}}$} \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{1 - \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) \\
\Arrow{This line has been wrapped automatically.} \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{1 - e^{i \frac{n\pi}{2}}}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right)
\end{DispWithArrows*}
```

$$\begin{aligned} S_n &= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^k \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left(\frac{1 - \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left(\frac{1 - e^{i \frac{n\pi}{2}}}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) \end{aligned}$$

sum of terms of a geometric progression of ratio $e^{i \frac{2\pi}{n}}$
This line has been wrapped automatically.

The option `wrap-lines` doesn't apply to the environments `{WithArrows}` nested in an environment `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}`. However, it applies to the instructions `\Arrow` and `\MultiArrow` of the `code-after` of the environments `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}`.

We have said that the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` should be used in horizontal mode and not in vertical mode. However, there is an exception. These environments can be used directly after a `\item` of a LaTeX list. In this case, no vertical space is added before the environment.¹⁹

Here is an example. The use of `{DispWithArrows}` gives the ability to tag an equation (and also to use `wrap-lines`).

```
\begin{enumerate}
\item
\begin{DispWithArrows}%
[displaystyle, wrap-lines, tagged-lines = last, fleqn, mathindent = 0 pt]
S_n
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^k \right) \\
\Arrow{we use the formula for a sum of terms of a geometric progression of
ratio $e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}$} \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) \\
\Arrow{$\left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n = e^{i \frac{n\pi}{2}} = i$} \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right)
\end{DispWithArrows}
\end{enumerate}
```

$$\begin{aligned}
1. S_n &= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^k \right) && \text{we use the formula for a sum of terms of a geometric} \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left(\frac{1 - \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) && \text{progression of ratio } e^{i \frac{2\pi}{n}} \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left(\frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) && \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n = e^{i \frac{n\pi}{2}} = i
\end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

The environment `{DispWithArrows}` is similar to the environment `{align}` of `amsmath`. However, `{DispWithArrows}` is not constructed upon `{align}` (in fact, it's possible to use `witharrows` without `amsmath`).

There are differences between `{DispWithArrows}` and `{align}`.

- The environment `{DispWithArrows}` cannot be inserted in an environment `{gather}` of `amsmath`.
- An environment `{DispWithArrows}` is always unbreakable (even with `\allowdisplaybreaks` of `amsmath`).
- The commands `\label`, `\tag`, `\notag` and `\nonumber` are allowed only in the last column.
- After an `\item` of a LaTeX list, no vertical space is added (this can be changed with the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`).
- **Last but not least, by default, the elements of a `\{DispWithArrows\}` are composed in `textstyle` and not in `displaystyle` (it's possible to change this point with the option `displaystyle`).**

¹⁹It's possible to disable this feature with the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`.

Concerning the references, the package `witharrows` is compatible with the extensions `autonum`, `cleveref`, `fancyref`, `hyperref`, `listlbls`, `prettyref`, `refcheck`, `refstyle`, `showlabels`, `smartref`, `typedref` and `variorref`, and with the options `showonlyrefs` and `showmanualtags` of `mathtools`.²⁰

It is not compatible with `showkeys` (not all the labels are shown).

9.1 The option <...> of `DispWithArrows`

The environment `{DispWithArrows}` provides an option `left-brace`. When present, the value of this option is composed on the left, followed by a curly brace (hence the name) and the body of the environment.²¹

For lisibility, this option `left-brace` is also available with a special syntax: it's possible to give this option between angle brackets (< and >) just after `{DispWithArrows}` (before the optional arguments between square brackets).

The following code is an example of multi-case equations.²²

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}< \binom{n}{p} = >[format = ll,fleqn,displaystyle]
0 & \quad \text{if } p > n
\Arrow{if fact, it's a special case\\ of the following one} \\
\frac{n(n-1)\cdots(n-p+1)}{p!} & \quad \text{if } 0 \leq p \leq n \\
0 & \quad \text{if } p < 0
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$\binom{n}{p} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } p > n \\ \frac{n(n-1)\cdots(n-p+1)}{p!} & \text{if } 0 \leq p \leq n \\ 0 & \text{if } p < 0 \end{cases} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{if fact, it's a special case} \\ \text{of the following one} \end{array} \quad (14)$$

$$(15)$$

$$(16)$$

In the following example, we subnumerate the equations with the option `subequations` (available when the package `amsmath` is loaded).

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}< \label{system} \ref*{system} \Leftrightarrow >[
    format = l, subequations ]
x+y+z = -3 \Arrow[tikz=-,jump=2]{3 equations} \\
xy+xz+yz=-2 \\
xyz = -15 \label{last-equation}
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$(17) \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + y + z = -3 \\ xy + xz + yz = -2 \\ xyz = -15 \end{cases} \quad (17a)$$

$$(17b)$$

$$(17c)$$

The whole system is the equation (17) (this reference has been coded by `\ref{system}`) whereas the last equation is the equation (17c) (this reference has been coded by `\ref{last-equation}`). The command `\ref*` used in the code above is a variant of the command `\ref` which does not create interactive link (even when `hyperref` is loaded).

²⁰We recall that `variorref`, `hyperref`, `cleveref` and `autonum` must be loaded in this order. The package `witharrows` can be loaded anywhere.

²¹The option `left-brace` can also be used without value: in this case, only the brace is drawn...

²²The environment `{cases}` of `amsmath` is a way to compose such multi-cases equations. However, it's not possible to use the automatic numbering of equations with this environment. The environment `{numcases}` of the extension `cases` (written by Donald Arseneau) provides this possibility but, of course, it's not possible to draw arrows with this extension.

With the option `replace-left-brace-by`, it's possible to replace the left curly brace by another extensible delimiter. For example, “`replace-left-brace-by = [\enskip]`” will compose with a bracket and add also a `\enskip` after this bracket.

10 Advanced features

10.1 Utilisation with Beamer

New 2.9

If `witharrows` is used with Beamer, the command `\Arrow` takes in as argument between angular brackets (after the optional argument in square brackets) to specify the *overlays* which are implied (internally, `witharrows` merely uses the command `\only` of Beamer).

```
\Arrow[jump=2]<3>\{Example}
```

10.2 Use with plain-TeX

The extension `witharrows` can be used with plain-TeX. In this case, the extension must be loaded with `\input`:

```
\input{witharrows}
```

In plain-TeX, there is not environments as in LaTeX. Instead of using the environment `{Witharrows}`, with `\begin{WithArrows}` and `\end{WithArrows}`, one should use a pseudo-environment delimited by `\WithArrows` and `\endWithArrows` (idem for `{DispWithArrows}`).

```
$\WithArrows
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\endWithArrows$
```

The version of `witharrows` for plain-TeX doesn't provide all the functionalities of the LaTeX version. In particular, the functionalities which deal with the number of the equations are not available (since they rely upon the system of tags of LaTeX).

10.3 The option `tikz-code` : how to change the shape of the arrows

The option `tikz-code` allows the user to change the shape of the arrows.²³

For example, the options “up” and “down” described previously (cf. p. 10) are programmed internally with `tikz-code`.

The value of this option must be a valid Tikz drawing instruction (with the final semicolon) with three markers `#1`, `#2` and `#3` for the start point, the end point and the label of the arrow.

The initial value is the following:

```
\draw (#1) to node {#3} (#2) ;
```

In the following example, we replace this default path by a path with three segments (and the node overwriting the second segment).

²³If the option `wrap-lines` is used in an environment `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}`, the option `tikz-code` will have no effect for the arrows of this environment but only for the arrows in the nested environments `{WithArrows}`.

```
\begin{WithArrows}[format=c,ygap=5pt,interline=4mm,
tikz-code = {\draw [rounded corners]
 (#1) -- ([xshift=5mm]#1)
 -- node[circle,
 draw,
 auto = false,
 fill = gray!50,
 inner sep = 1pt] {\tiny #3}
 ([xshift=5mm]#2)
 -- (#2) ; }]
3 (2x+4) = 6 \Arrow{$\div 3$} \\
2x+4 = 2 \Arrow{$-4$} \\
2x = -2 \Arrow{$\div 2$} \\
x = -1
\end{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{array}{l}
 3(2x + 4) = 6 \\
 2x + 4 = 2 \\
 2x = -2 \\
 x = -1
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{c}
 \leftarrow \\
 \leftarrow \\
 \leftarrow \\
 \leftarrow
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{c}
 \textcircled{\scriptsize $\div 3$} \\
 \textcircled{\scriptsize -4} \\
 \textcircled{\scriptsize $\div 2$}
 \end{array}$$

The environments `{DispWithArrows}` and its starred version `{DispWithArrows*}` provide a command `\WithArrowsRightX` which can be used in a definition of `tikz-code`. This command gives the x -value of the right side of the composition box (taking into account the eventual tags of the equations). For an example of use, see p. 30.

10.4 The command `\WithArrowsNewStyle`

The extension `witharrows` provides a command `\WithArrowsNewStyle` to define styles in a way similar to the “styles” of Tikz.

The command `\WithArrowsNewStyle` takes two mandatory arguments. The first is the name of the style and the second is a list of key-value pairs. The scope of the definition done by `\WithArrowsNewStyle` is the current TeX scope.²⁴

The style can be used as a key at the document level (with `\WithArrowsOptions`) or at the environment level (in the optional arguments of `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`). The style can also be used in another command `\WithArrowsNewStyle`.

For an example of use, see p. 30.

At this time, there is no style for individual arrows. However, it's, of course, possible to define new commands based upon the command `\Arrow`. For example :

```
\newcommand{\ThickArrow}{\Arrow[tikz=thick]}
```

This new command `\ThickArrow` still accepts options between square brackets. It's possible to write `\ThickArrow[jump=2]` because, in fact, `\Arrow[tikz=thick][jump=2]` is an allowed syntax for the command `\Arrow` (it's possible to put an arbitrary number of optional arguments between square brackets after `\Arrow`).

²⁴We recall that, in particular, every LaTeX environment is a TeX group.

10.5 The key right-overlap

The key `right-overlap` is a boolean key whose initial value is `true`. It deals with the environments `{WithArrows}` only.

When the key `right-overlap` is in force, the arrows (and their labels) are drawn in an overlapping position and are not relevant for the computation of the dimensions of the TeX box containing the environment `{WithArrows}`.

When the key `right-overlap` is set to `false` (with `\WithArrowsOptions` or whithin an individual environment `{WithArrows}`), the overlapping on the right is taken into account in the dimensions of the encompassing box.

```
$\left\{ \begin{WithArrows}[c,format = rCrCl,right-overlap=false]
```

$2x + 3y = 5 \rightarrow$ we add L_1 to L_2

$$-2x - 5y = 2$$

```
\end{WithArrows}\right.\$ \quad
```

```
$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \begin{WithArrows}[c,format = rCrCl] \end{WithArrows} \\ \end{array} \right.
```

2x & + & 3y & = & 5 \\

$$\& - \& 2y \& = \& 7$$

```
\end{WithArrows}\right.\$
```

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 2x + 3y = 5 \\ -2x - 5y = 2 \end{array} \right. \quad \text{we add } L_1 \text{ to } L_2 \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 2x + 3y = 5 \\ -2y = 7 \end{array} \right.$$

The tuning `right-overlap = false` may also be useful in conjunction with the class `standalone`.

10.6 Vertical positioning of the arrows

There are four parameters for fine tuning of the vertical positioning of the arrows : `ygap`, `ystart`, `start-adjust` and `end-adjust`.

We first explain the behaviour when the parameters `start-adjust` and `end-adjust` are equal to zero:

- the option `ystart` sets the vertical distance between the base line of the text and the start of the arrow (initial value: 0.4 ex);
 - the option `ygap` sets the vertical distance between two consecutive arrows (initial value: 0.4 ex).

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\cos x + \sin x)^2 &= \cos^2 x + 2 \cos x \sin x + \sin^2 x \\
 &= \cos^2 x + \sin^2 x + 2 \sin x \cos x \\
 &= 1 + \sin(2x)
 \end{aligned}$$

However, for aesthetic reasons, when it's possible, `witharrows` starts the arrow a bit higher (by an amount `start-adjust`) and ends the arrow a bit lower (by an amount `end-adjust`). By default, both parameters `start-adjust` and `end-adjust` are equal to 0.4 ex.

Here is for example the behaviour without the mechanism of `start-adjust` and `end-adjust`:

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [start-adjust=0pt, end-adjust=0pt]
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \downarrow \text{we expand}$$

Here is the standard behaviour (the parameters `start-adjust` and `end-adjust` are used with the initial value 0.4 ex). The arrow is longer and the result is more aesthetic.

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2a + 1$$

we expand

It's also possible to use the option `adjust` which sets both `start-adjust` and `end-adjust`.

An arrow of `jump` equal to 1 has a maximal length²⁵ equal to the parameter `max-length-of-arrow`. The initial value of this parameter is 2 cm.

In the following example, the value of `max-length-of-arrow` has been fixed to 1.5 cm.

```
\begin{WithArrows}[max-length-of-arrow = 1.5cm]
A
& =
\begin{vmatrix}
1 & a & a^2 & a^3 & a^4 \\
1 & b & b^2 & b^3 & b^4 \\
1 & c & c^2 & c^3 & c^4 \\
1 & d & d^2 & d^3 & d^4 \\
1 & e & e^2 & e^3 & e^4
\end{vmatrix}
\begin{Arrow}
\$L_2 \gets L_2 - L_1 \\
\$L_3 \gets L_3 - L_1 \\
\$L_4 \gets L_4 - L_1 \\
\$L_5 \gets L_5 - L_1 % don't put \\ here
\end{Arrow}
& =
\begin{vmatrix}
1 & a & a^2 & a^3 & a^4 \\
0 & b-a & b^2-a^2 & b^3-a^3 & b^4-a^4 \\
0 & c-a & c^2-a^2 & c^3-a^3 & c^4-a^4 \\
0 & d-a & d^2-a^2 & d^3-a^3 & d^4-a^4 \\
0 & e-a & e^2-a^2 & e^3-a^3 & e^4-a^4
\end{vmatrix}
\end{WithArrows}
```

$$A = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a & a^2 & a^3 & a^4 \\ 1 & b & b^2 & b^3 & b^4 \\ 1 & c & c^2 & c^3 & c^4 \\ 1 & d & d^2 & d^3 & d^4 \\ 1 & e & e^2 & e^3 & e^4 \end{vmatrix} \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} L_2 \leftarrow L_2 - L_1 \\ L_3 \leftarrow L_3 - L_1 \\ L_4 \leftarrow L_4 - L_1 \\ L_5 \leftarrow L_5 - L_1 \end{array} \right\} \quad \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a & a^2 & a^3 & a^4 \\ 0 & b-a & b^2-a^2 & b^3-a^3 & b^4-a^4 \\ 0 & c-a & c^2-a^2 & c^3-a^3 & c^4-a^4 \\ 0 & d-a & d^2-a^2 & d^3-a^3 & d^4-a^4 \\ 0 & e-a & e^2-a^2 & e^3-a^3 & e^4-a^4 \end{vmatrix}$$

10.7 Footnotes in the environments `witharrows`

If you want to put footnotes in an environment `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`, you can use a pair `\footnotemark–\footnotetext`.

It's also possible to extract the footnotes with the help of the package `footnote` or the package `footnotehyper`.

²⁵We call *length* of an arrow the difference between the *y*-value of its start point and the *y* value of its end point.

If `witharrows` is loaded with the option `footnote` (with `\usepackage[footnote]{witharrows}` or with `\PassOptionsToPackage`), the package `footnote` is loaded (if it is not yet loaded) and it is used to extract the footnotes.

If `witharrows` is loaded with the option `footnotehyper`, the package `footnotehyper` is loaded (if it is not yet loaded) and it is used to extract footnotes.

Caution: The packages `footnote` and `footnotehyper` are incompatible. The package `footnotehyper` is the successor of the package `footnote` and should be used preferentially. The package `footnote` has some drawbacks, in particular: it must be loaded after the package `xcolor` and it is not perfectly compatible with `hyperref`.

In this document, the package `witharrows` has been loaded with the option `footnotehyper` and we give an example with a footnote in the label of an arrow:

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a + b)^2 \\ &= a^2 + b^2 + 2ab \end{aligned} \quad \text{We expand}\text{²⁶}$$

10.8 Option no-arrows

The option `no-arrows` is a convenience given to the user. With this option the arrows are not drawn. However, an analysis of the arrows is done and some errors can be raised, for example if an arrow would arrive after the last row of the environment.

10.9 Note for the users of AUCTeX

In a editor of text with a LaTeX-oriented mode, the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` should be formated like the environment `equation` of LaTeX, that is to say with a formating adapted to the math mode of TeX.

In Emacs with the AUCTeX mode, it's possible to achieve such a customization by adding the strings "DispWithArrows" and "DispWithArrows*" to the variable `font-latex-math-environments`. It's possible to do that with the "easy customization" interface of Emacs:

M-x customize > [Text] > [TeX] > [Font LaTeX]

10.10 Note for the developpers

If you want to construct an environment upon an environment of `witharrows`, we recommand to call the environment with the construction `\WithArrows-\endWithArrows` (and not `\begin{WithArrows}` and `\end{WithArrows}`).

By doing so, the error messages generated by `witharrows` will (usually) mention the name of your environment and they will be easier to understand by the final user.

By example, you can define an environment `{DWA}` which is an alias of `{DispWithArrows}`:
`\NewDocumentEnvironment {DWA} {} {\DispWithArrows}{\endDispWithArrows}`

If you use this environment `{DWA}` in math mode, you will have the following error message:
The environment `{DWA}` should be used only outside math mode.

Another example is the definition of the environment `{DispWithArrows*}` internally in the package `witharrows` by the following code:

```
\NewDocumentEnvironment {DispWithArrows*} {}
  {\WithArrowsOptions{notag}%
   \DispWithArrows}
  {\endDispWithArrows}
```

²⁶A footnote.

11 Examples

11.1 \MoveEqLeft

It's possible to use `\MoveEqLeft` of `mathtools`. Don't forget that `\MoveEqLeft` has also the value of an ampersand (`&`). That's important for the placement of an eventual command `\Arrow`.

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [interline=0.5ex]
\MoveEqLeft \arccos(x) = \arcsin \frac{4}{5} + \arcsin \frac{5}{13}
\Arrow[because both are in $[-\frac{\pi}{2},\frac{\pi}{2}]$] \\
& \Leftrightarrow x = \sin(\arcsin \frac{4}{5} + \arcsin \frac{5}{13}) \\
& = \frac{4}{5} \cos \arcsin \frac{5}{13} + \frac{5}{13} \cos \arcsin \frac{4}{5} \\
\Arrow[$\forall x \in [-1,1], \cos(\arcsin x) = \sqrt{1-x^2}$] \\
& \Leftrightarrow x = \frac{4}{5} \sqrt{1 - (\frac{5}{13})^2} + \frac{5}{13} \sqrt{1 - (\frac{4}{5})^2}
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} \arccos(x) &= \arcsin \frac{4}{5} + \arcsin \frac{5}{13} && \left. \right) \text{ because both are in } [-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}] \\ \Leftrightarrow x &= \sin \left(\arcsin \frac{4}{5} + \arcsin \frac{5}{13} \right) \\ \Leftrightarrow x &= \frac{4}{5} \cos \arcsin \frac{5}{13} + \frac{5}{13} \cos \arcsin \frac{4}{5} && \left. \right) \forall x \in [-1, 1], \cos(\arcsin x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2} \\ \Leftrightarrow x &= \frac{4}{5} \sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{5}{13} \right)^2} + \frac{5}{13} \sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{4}{5} \right)^2} \end{aligned}$$

11.2 A command \DoubleArrow

By using the key `o` (cf. p. 9) available at the local level, it's easy to write a command `\DoubleArrow` for two arrows going in opposite directions.

```
\NewDocumentCommand \DoubleArrow { O {} m m }
{
    \Arrow[tikz=>,#1]{#2}%
    \Arrow[o,tikz=<-,#1]{#3}
}
```

Example of use:

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [groups]
A &= (a+b)^2 \DoubleArrow[tikz={font=\bfseries}]{expansion} \\
&= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \DoubleArrow[factorization]{factorization}
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+b)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \end{aligned} \quad \begin{array}{l} \leftarrow \text{expansion} \quad \rightarrow \text{factorization} \end{array}$$

11.3 Modifying the shape of the nodes

It's possible to change the shape of the labels, which are Tikz nodes, by modifying the key “`every node`” of Tikz.

```
\begin{WithArrows}%
[format = c,
 interline = 4mm,
 tikz = {every node/.style = {circle,
                               draw,
                               auto = false,
```

```

fill = gray!50,
inner sep = 1pt,
font = \tiny\}]}
3 (2x+4) = 6 \Arrow{$\div 3$} \\
2x+4 = 2 \Arrow{$-4$} \\
2x = -2 \Arrow{$\div 2$} \\
2x = -1
\end{WithArrows}

```

$$\begin{array}{l}
3(2x + 4) = 6 \\
2x + 4 = 2 \\
2x = -2 \\
2x = -1
\end{array}$$

11.4 Examples with the option tikz-code

We recall that the option `tikz-code` is the Tikz code used by `witharrows` to draw the arrows.²⁷

The value by default of `tikz-code` is `\draw (#1) to node [#3] (#2)` ; where the three markers `#1`, `#2` and `#3` represent the start row, the end row and the label of the arrow.

11.4.1 Example 1

In the following example, we define the value of `tikz-code` with two instructions `\path` : the first instruction draws the arrow itself and the second puts the label in a Tikz node in the rectangle delimited by the arrow.

```

\begin{DispWithArrows*}%
[displaystyle,
ygap = 2mm,
ystart = 0mm,
tikz-code = {\draw (#1) -- ++(4.5cm,0) |- (#2) ;
\path (#1) -- (#2)
node [text width = 4.2cm, right, midway] {#3} ;}]
S_n
& = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos \bigl( \frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{k}{n} \bigr)
.....

```

²⁷If an environment `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}` is used with the option `wrap-lines`, the value of the option `tikz-code` is not used for this environment (but is used for the environments nested inside).

$$\begin{aligned}
S_n &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{k}{n}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \Re\left(e^{i \frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} e^{i \frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^k\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

cos $x = \Re(e^{ix})$
 $\Re(z + z') = \Re(z) + \Re(z')$
exp is a morphism for \times and
+
sum of terms of a geometric
progression of ratio $e^{i \frac{2\pi}{n}}$

11.4.2 Example 2

It's possible to modify the previous example to have the “`text width`” automatically computed with the right margin (in a way similar as the `wrap-lines` option) in the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`. In the definition of `tikz-code`, we use the command `\WithArrowsRightX` which is the x -value of the right margin of the current composition box (it's a TeX command and not a dimension). For lisibility, we use a style. This example requires the Tikz library `calc`.

```

\WithArrowsNewStyle{MyStyle}
{displaystyle,
ygap = 2mm,
xoffset = Opt,
ystart = 0mm,
tikz-code = {\path let \p1 = (#1)
in (#1)
-- node [anchor = west,
text width = {(\WithArrowsRightX - \x1 - 0.5 em)}]
{#3}
(#2) ;
\draw let \p1 = (#1)
in (#1) -- ++(\WithArrowsRightX - \x1,0) |- (#2) ; }}

begin{DispWithArrows}[MyStyle]
S_n
&= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos\bigl(\tfrac{\pi}{2} \cdot \tfrac{k}{n}\bigr)
\Arrow{$\cos x = \Re(e^{ix})$} \\
.....

```

$$S_n = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{k}{n}\right) \quad | \quad \cos x = \Re(e^{ix}) \quad (18)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \Re\left(e^{i\frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) \quad | \quad \Re(z + z') = \Re(z) + \Re(z') \quad (19)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} e^{i\frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) \quad | \quad \Re(z + z') = \Re(z) + \Re(z') \quad (20)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} (e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}})^k\right) \quad | \quad \exp \text{ is a morphism for } \times \text{ and } + \quad (21)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - (e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}})^n}{1 - e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right) \quad | \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{sum of terms of a geometric} \\ \text{progression of ratio } e^{i\frac{2\pi}{n}} \end{array} \quad (22)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right) \quad (23)$$

11.4.3 Example 3

In the following example, we change the shape of the arrow depending on whether the start row is longer than the end row or not. This example requires the Tikz library `calc`.

```
\begin{WithArrows}[ll, interline=5mm, xoffset=5mm,
tikz-code = {\draw[rounded corners,
every node/.style = {circle,
draw,
auto = false,
inner sep = 1pt,
fill = gray!50,
font = \tiny}]}
let \p1 = (~#1),
\p2 = (~#2)
in \ifdim \x1 > \x2
    (\p1) -- node {~#3} (\x1,\y2) -- (\p2)
\else
    (\p1) -- (\x2,\y1) -- node {~#3} (\p2)
\fi ;]
E & \Longleftrightarrow \frac{(x+4)}{3} + \frac{5x+3}{5} = 7
\Arrow{$\times 15$} \\
& \Longleftrightarrow 5(x+4) + 3(5x+3) = 105 \\
& \Longleftrightarrow 5x+20 + 15x+9 = 105 \\
& \Longleftrightarrow 20x+29 = 105
\Arrow{$-29$} \\
& \Longleftrightarrow 20x = 76
\Arrow{$\div 20$} \\
& \Longleftrightarrow x = \frac{38}{10}
```

$$\begin{aligned}
E \iff & \frac{(x+4)}{3} + \frac{5x+3}{5} = 7 \\
& \downarrow \times 15 \\
\iff & 5(x+4) + 3(5x+3) = 105 \\
& \downarrow \\
\iff & 5x + 20 + 15x + 9 = 105 \\
& \downarrow \\
\iff & 20x + 29 = 105 \\
& \downarrow -29 \\
\iff & 20x = 76 \\
& \downarrow \div 20 \\
\iff & x = \frac{38}{10}
\end{aligned}$$

11.5 Automatic numbered loop

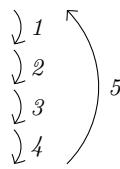
Assume we want to draw a loop of numbered arrows. In this purpose, it's possible to write a dedicated command `\NumberedLoop` which will do the job when used in `code-after`. In the following example, we write this command with `\NewDocumentCommand` (of L3) and `\foreach` of pgffor (which is loaded when `witharrows` is loaded).

```
\NewDocumentCommand \NumberedLoop {}
  {\foreach \j in {2,...,\WithArrowsNbLines}
    { \pgfmathtruncatemacro{\i}{\j-1}
      \Arrow[rr]{\i}{\j}{\i}
    }
  \Arrow[rr, xoffset=1cm, tikz=<-]{1}{\WithArrowsNbLines}{\WithArrowsNbLines}}
```

The command `\WithArrowsNbLines` is a command available in `code-after` which gives the total number of lines (=rows) of the current environment (it's a command and not a counter).

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [code-after = \NumberedLoop]
a.;& f \text{ est continuous on } E \\
b.;& f \text{ est continuous in } 0 \\
c.;& f \text{ is bounded on the unit sphere} \\
d.;& \exists K > 0 \quad \forall x \in E \quad \|f(x)\| \leq K \|x\| \\
e.;& f \text{ is lipschitzian}
\end{WithArrows}$
```

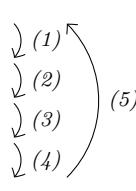
- a. f est continuous on E
- b. f est continuous in 0
- c. f is bounded on the unit sphere
- d. $\exists K > 0 \quad \forall x \in E \quad \|f(x)\| \leq K \|x\|$
- e. f is lipschitzian



As usual, it's possible to change the characteristic of both arrows and nodes with the option `tikz`. However, if we want to change the style to have, for example, numbers in round brackets, the best way is to change the value of `tikz-code`:

```
tikz-code = {\draw (#1) to node {\footnotesize (#3)} (#2) ;}
```

- a. f est continuous on E
- b. f est continuous in 0
- c. f is bounded on the unit sphere
- d. $\exists K > 0 \quad \forall x \in E \quad \|f(x)\| \leq K \|x\|$
- e. f is lipschitzian



12 Implementation

The development of the extension `witharrows` is done on the following GitHub depot:
<https://github.com/fpantigny/witharrows>

12.1 Declaration of the package and extensions loaded

The prefix `witharrows` has been registered for this extension.

See: <http://mirrors.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/l3kernel/l3prefixes.pdf>
<@@=witharrows>

First, `tikz` and some `Tikz` libraries are loaded before the `\ProvidesExplPackage`. They are loaded this way because `\usetikzlibrary` in L3 code fails.²⁸

```
1  {*LaTeX}
2  \RequirePackage{tikz}
3  (/LaTeX)
4  (*plain-TeX)
5  \input tikz.tex
6  \input expl3-generic.tex
7  (/plain-TeX)
8  \usetikzlibrary{arrows.meta}
9  \usepgfmodule{bending} % https://texnique.fr/osqa/questions/12199
```

Then, we can give the traditional declaration of a package written with L3:

```
10 (*LaTeX)
11 \ProvidesExplPackage
12   {witharrows}
13   {\myfiledate}
14   {\myfileversion}
15   {Draws arrows for explanations on the right}
16 \msg_new:nnn { witharrows } { latex-too-old }
17 {
18   Your~LaTeX~release~is~too~old. \\
19   You~need~at~least~a~the~version~of~2025-06-01
20 }
21 \providecommand { \IfFormatAtLeastTF } { \@ifl@t@r \fmtversion }
22 \IfFormatAtLeastTF
23   { 2025-06-01 }
24   { }
25   { \msg_fatal:nn { witharrows } { latex-too-old } }
26 \msg_new:nnn { witharrows } { tag-active }
27 {
28   witharrows-and-tagged-PDF\\
29   As-of-now,~witharrows~is~not~fully~compatible~with~tagging.~
30   You~will~have~fatal~errors~if~you~use~\DispWithArrows}.
31 }
32 \tag_if_active:T { \msg_error:nn { witharrows } { tag-active } }
33 \RequirePackage { varwidth }
34 (/LaTeX)
35 (*plain-TeX)
36 \ExplSyntaxOn
37 \catcode `\: = 11
38 (/plain-TeX)
```

²⁸cf. tex.stackexchange.com/questions/57424/using-of-usetikzlibrary-in-an-expl3-package-fails

12.2 The packages footnote and footnotehyper

A few options can be given to the package `witharrows` when it is loaded (with `\usepackage`, `\RequirePackage` or `\PassOptionsToPackage`). Currently (version 2.9x), there are two such options: `footnote` and `footnotehyper`. With the option `footnote`, `witharrows` loads `footnote` and uses it to extract the footnotes from the environments `{WithArrows}`. Idem for the option `footnotehyper`.

The boolean `\g_@@_footnotehyper_bool` will indicate if the option `footnotehyper` is used.

```
39  (*LaTeX)
40  \bool_new:N \g_@@_footnotehyper_bool
```

The boolean `\g_@@_footnote_bool` will indicate if the option `footnote` is used, but quickly, it will also be set to `true` if the option `footnotehyper` is used.

```
41  \bool_new:N \g_@@_footnote_bool
42  /LaTeX)

43 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_msg_new:nn { \msg_new:nnn { witharrows } }
44 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_msg_new:nnn #1 #2 #3
45 {
46   \bool_if:NTF \c_@@_messages_for_Overleaf_bool
47   { \msg_new:nnn { witharrows } { #1 } { #2 \\ #3 } }
48   { \msg_new:nnnn { witharrows } { #1 } { #2 } { #3 } }
49 }
50 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn
51 { \msg_redirect_name:nnn { witharrows } }
52 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_error:n { \msg_error:nn { witharrows } }
53 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_warning:n { \msg_warning:nn { witharrows } }
54 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_fatal:n { \msg_fatal:nn { witharrows } }
55 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_error:nn { \msg_error:nnn { witharrows } }
56 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_error:nn { n e }
```

We also create a command which will generate usually an error but only a warning on Overleaf. The argument is given by currfication.

```
57 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_error_or_warning:n
58 {
59   \bool_if:NTF \c_@@_messages_for_Overleaf_bool
60   { @@_warning:n }
61   { @@_error:n }
62 }
```

We try to detect whether the compilation is done on Overleaf. We use `\c_sys_jobname_str` because, with Overleaf, the value of `\c_sys_jobname_str` is always “output”.

```
63 \bool_const:Nn \c_@@_messages_for_Overleaf_bool
64 {
65   \str_if_eq_p:on \c_sys_jobname_str { _region_ } % for Emacs
66   || \str_if_eq_p:on \c_sys_jobname_str { output } % for Overleaf
67 }

68 \bool_new:N \g_@@_beamer_bool
```

We define a set of keys `witharrows` for these options.

```
69 (*LaTeX)
70 \keys_define:nn { witharrows }
71 {
72   footnote .bool_gset:N = \g_@@_footnote_bool ,
73   footnotehyper .bool_gset:N = \g_@@_footnotehyper_bool ,
74   footnote .usage:n = load ,
75   footnotehyper .usage:n = load ,
76   beamer .bool_gset:N = \g_@@_beamer_bool ,
77   beamer .default:n = true ,
78   beamer .usage:n = load ,
79   unknown .code:n = \@@_fatal:n { Option~unknown~for~package }
80 }
```

```

81 \@@_msg_new:nn { Option-unknown-for-package }
82 {
83   You-can't-use-the-option-'l_keys_key_str'-when-loading-the-
84   package-witharrows.-Try-to-use-the-command-
85   \token_to_str:N \WithArrowsOptions.
86 }
```

We process the options when the package is loaded (with `\usepackage`).

```

87 \ProcessKeyOptions
88 \IfClassLoadedT { beamer } { \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_beamer_bool }
89 \IfPackageLoadedT { beamerarticle } { \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_beamer_bool }

90 \@@_msg_new:nn { footnote-with-footnotehyper-package }
91 {
92   Footnote-forbidden.\\
93   You-can't-use-the-option-'footnote'-because-the-package-
94   footnotehyper-has-already-been-loaded.~
95   If-you-want,-you-can-use-the-option-'footnotehyper'-and-the-footnotes-
96   within-the-environments-of-witharrows-will-be-extracted-with-the-tools-
97   of-the-package-footnotehyper.\\
98   If-you-go-on,-the-package-footnote-won't-be-loaded.
99 }
```

```

100 \@@_msg_new:nn { footnotehyper-with-footnote-package }
101 {
102   You-can't-use-the-option-'footnotehyper'-because-the-package-
103   footnote-has-already-been-loaded.~
104   If-you-want,-you-can-use-the-option-'footnote'-and-the-footnotes-
105   within-the-environments-of-witharrows-will-be-extracted-with-the-tools-
106   of-the-package-footnote.\\
107   If-you-go-on,-the-package-footnotehyper-won't-be-loaded.
108 }
```

```

109 \bool_if:NT \g_@@_footnote_bool
110 {
```

The class `beamer` has its own system to extract footnotes and that's why we have nothing to do if `beamer` is used.

```

111 \IfClassLoadedTF { beamer }
112   { \bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_footnote_bool }
113   {
114     \IfPackageLoadedTF { footnotehyper }
115     { \@@_error:n { footnote-with-footnotehyper-package } }
116     { \usepackage { footnote } }
117   }
118 }
```

```

119 \bool_if:NT \g_@@_footnotehyper_bool
120 {
```

The class `beamer` has its own system to extract footnotes and that's why we have nothing to do if `beamer` is used.

```

121 \IfClassLoadedTF { beamer }
122   { \bool_gset_false:N \g_@@_footnote_bool }
123   {
124     \IfPackageLoadedTF { footnote }
125     { \@@_error:n { footnotehyper-with-footnote-package } }
126     { \usepackage { footnotehyper } }
127     \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_footnote_bool
128   }
129 }
```

The flag `\g_@@_footnote_bool` is raised and so, we will only have to test `\g_@@_footnote_bool` in order to know if we have to insert an environment `{savenotes}` (the `\begin{savenotes}` is in `\@@_pre_halign:n` and `\end{savenotes}` at the end of the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`).

12.3 The class option leqno

The boolean `\c_@@_leqno_bool` will indicate if the class option `leqno` is used. When this option is used in LaTeX, the command `\eqnnum` is redefined (as one can see in the file `leqno.clo`). That's enough to put the labels on the left in our environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`. However, that's not enough when our option `wrap-lines` is used. That's why we have to know if this option is used as a class option. With the following programmation, `leqno` *can't* be given as an option of `witharrows` (by design).

```

130 \bool_new:N \c_@@_leqno_bool
131 \DeclareOption { leqno } { \bool_set_true:N \c_@@_leqno_bool }
132 \DeclareOption* { }
133 \ProcessOptions*
134 
```

12.4 Collecting options

The following technic allows to create user commands with the ability to put an arbitrary number of `[list of (key=val)]` after the name of the command.

Exemple :

```
\@@_collect_options:n { \F } [x=a,y=b] [z=c,t=d] { arg }
```

will be transformed in : `\F{x=a,y=b,z=c,t=d}{arg}`

Therefore, by writing : `\def\G{\@@_collect_options:n{\F}}`,
the command `\G` takes in an arbitrary number of optional arguments between square brackets.

```

135 (*LaTeX)
136 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_collect_options:n #1
137 {
138   \peek_meaning:NTF [
139     { \@@_collect_options:nw { #1 } }
140     { #1 { } }
141 }

```

We use `\NewDocumentCommand` in order to be able to allow nested brackets within the argument between `[` and `]`.

```

142 \NewDocumentCommand \@@_collect_options:nw { m r[] }
143   { \@@_collect_options:nn { #1 } { #2 } }

144 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_collect_options:nn #1 #2
145 {
146   \peek_meaning:NTF [
147     { \@@_collect_options:nnw { #1 } { #2 } }
148     { #1 { #2 } }
149   }
150 }

151 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_collect_options:nnw #1 #2 [ #3 ]
152   { \@@_collect_options:nn { #1 } { #2 , #3 } }
153 
```

12.5 Some technical definitions

```

155 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_set_split:Nnn { N e e }
156 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_precompile:nnN { n n c }
157 \prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \tl_if_no_value:n { o } { F }
158 \exp_args_generate:n { N N N n o }

```

We define a command `\@@_sort_seq:N` which will sort a sequence.

```

159 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_sort_seq:N #1
160 {
161     \seq_sort:Nn #1
162     {
163         \str_compare:eNeTF
164             { \str_lowercase:n { ##1 } } < { \str_lowercase:n { ##2 } }
165         \sort_return_same:
166         \sort_return_swapped:
167     }
168 }

```

The following command creates a sequence of strings (`str`) from a `clist`.

```

169 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn #1 #2
170 {
171     \seq_set_from_clist:Nn #1 { #2 }
172     \seq_set_map_e:NNn #1 #1 { \tl_to_str:n { ##1 } }
173 }

```

The command `\@@_save:N` saves a L3 variable by creating a global version of the variable. For a variable named `\l_name_type`, the corresponding global variable will be named `\g_name_type`. The type of the variable is determinated by the suffix `type` and is used to apply the corresponding L3 commands.

```

174 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_save:N #1
175 {
176     \seq_set_split:Nee \l_tmpa_seq
177         { \char_generate:nn { `_ } { 12 } }
178         { \cs_to_str:N #1 }
179     \seq_pop_left:NN \l_tmpa_seq \l_tmpa_tl

```

The string `\l_tmpa_str` will contains the `type` of the variable.

```

180 \str_set:Ne \l_tmpa_str { \seq_item:Nn \l_tmpa_seq { -1 } }
181 \use:c { \l_tmpa_str_if_exist:cF }
182 { g _\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq { _ } { _ } { _ } }
183 {
184     \use:c { \l_tmpa_str_new:c }
185     { g _\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq { _ } { _ } { _ } }
186 }
187 \use:c { \l_tmpa_str_gset_eq:cN }
188 { g _\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq { _ } { _ } { _ } } #1
189 }

```

The command `\@@_restore:N` affects to the L3 variable the value of the (previously) set value of the corresponding `global` variable.

```

190 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_restore:N #1
191 {
192     \seq_set_split:Nee \l_tmpa_seq
193         { \char_generate:nn { `_ } { 12 } }
194         { \cs_to_str:N #1 }
195     \seq_pop_left:NN \l_tmpa_seq \l_tmpa_tl
196     \str_set:Ne \l_tmpa_str { \seq_item:Nn \l_tmpa_seq { -1 } }
197     \use:c { \l_tmpa_str_set_eq:Nc }
198     #1 { g _\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq { _ } { _ } { _ } }
199 }

```

We define a Tikz style `@@_node_style` for the `l`-nodes and `r`-nodes that will be created in the `\halign`. These nodes are Tikz nodes of shape “rectangle” but with zero width. An arrow between two nodes starts from the *south* anchor of the first node and arrives at the *north* anchor of the second node.

```

200 \tikzset
201 {
202   @@_node_style / .style =
203   {
204     above = \l_@@_ystart_dim ,
205     inner sep = \c_zero_dim ,
206     minimum width = \c_zero_dim ,
207     minimum height = \l_@@_ygap_dim
208   }
209 }
```

If the user uses the option `show-nodes` (it's a `I3keys` option), the Tikz options `draw` and `red` will be appended to this style. This feature may be useful for debugging.²⁹

The style `@@_standard` is loaded in standard in the `{tikzpicture}` we need. The names of the nodes are prefixed by `wa` (by security) but also by a prefix which is the position-in-the-tree of the nested environments.

```

210 \tikzset
211 {
212   @@_standard / .style =
213   {
214     remember picture ,
215     overlay ,
216     name-prefix = wa - \l_@@_prefix_str -
217   },
218   @@_standard_arrow / .style =
219   {
220     @@_standard ,
221     every path / .style = WithArrows / arrow
222   }
223 }
```

The following line is a security when using `xelatex` and RTL language (cf. question 683570 on TeX StackExchange).

```

224 \sys_if_engine_xetex:T
225 {
226   \tikzset
227   {
228     @@_standard_arrow / .append style =
229     { every node / .append style = { text = . } }
230   }
231 }
```

We also define a style for the tips of arrow. The final user of the extension `witharrows` will use this style if he wants to draw an arrow directly with a Tikz command in his document (probably using the Tikz nodes created by `{WithArrows}` in the `\halign`). This style is documented in the documentation of `witharrows`.

```

232 \tikzset
233 {
234   WithArrows / arrow / tips / .style =
235   { > = { Straight-Barb [ scale = 1.2 , bend ] } }
236 }
```

The style `WithArrows/arrow` will be used to draw the arrows (more precisely, it will be passed to `every-path`). This style is documented in the documentation of `witharrows`.

```
237 \tikzset
```

²⁹The `v`-nodes, created near the end of line in `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` are not shown with the option `show-nodes`.

```

238  {
239    WithArrows / arrow / .style  =
240    {
241      align = flush-left ,
Before the version 2.7, it was align = left.
242      auto = left ,
243  <*LaTeX>
244      font = \small \itshape ,
245  </LaTeX>
246      WithArrows / arrow / tips ,
247      bend-left = 45 ,
248      ->
249    }
250  }

```

The option `subequations` is an option which uses the environment `{subequations}` of `amsmath`. That's why, if `amsmath` is loaded, we add the key `subequations` to the list of the keys available in `\WithArrowsOptions` and `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

251  <*LaTeX>
252  \AtBeginDocument
253  {
254    \IfPackageLoadedTF { amsmath }
255    {
256      \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq { subequations }
257      \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq { subequations }
258    }

```

In order to increase the interline in the environments `{WithArrows}`, `{DispWithArrows}`, etc., we will use the command `\spread@equation` of `amsmath`. When used, this command becomes no-op (in the current TeX group). Therefore, it will be possible to use the environments of `amsmath` (e.g. `{aligned}`) in an environment `{WithArrows}`.

Nevertheless, we want the extension `witharrows` available without `amsmath`. That's why we give a definition of `\spread@equation` if `amsmath` is not loaded.

```

259  {
260  </LaTeX>
261  \cs_new_protected:Npn \spread@equation
262  {
263    \openup \jot
264    \cs_set_eq:NN \spread@equation \prg_do_nothing:
265  }
266  <*LaTeX>
267  }
268  }
269  </LaTeX>

270 \tl_new:N \l_@@_left_brace_tl
271 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_left_brace_tl \c_novalue_tl

```

12.6 Variables

The boolean `\l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool` will be raised in an environment `{WithArrows}` and the boolean `\l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool` will be raised in an environment `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}`. The boolean `\l_@@_in_code_after_bool` will be raised during the execution of the `code-after` (option `code-after`).

```

272 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
273 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
274 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_code_after_bool

```

The following sequence is the position of the last environment `{WithArrows}` in the tree of the nested environments `{WithArrows}`.

```
275 \seq_new:N \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq
276 \seq_gput_right:Nn \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq { 1 }
```

The following counter will give the number of the last environment `{WithArrows}` of level 0. This counter will be used only in the definition of `\WithArrowsLastEnv`.

```
277 \int_new:N \g_@@_last_env_int
```

The following integer indicates the position of the box that will be created for an environment `{WithArrows}` (not an environment `{DispWithArrows}`) : 0 ($=t=\vtop$), 1 ($=c=\vcenter$) or 2 ($=b=\vbox$).

```
278 \int_new:N \l_@@_pos_env_int
```

The integer `\l_@@_pos_arrow_int` indicates the position of the arrow with the following code (the option `v` is accessible only for the arrows in `code-after` where the options `i`, `group` and `groups` are not available).

option	lr	ll	rl	rr	v	i	groups	group
<code>\l_@@_pos_arrow_int</code>	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

The option `v` can be used only in `\Arrow` in `code-after` (see below).

```
279 \int_new:N \l_@@_pos_arrow_int
280 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int { 3 }
```

In the `\halign` of an environment `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`, we will have to use four counters:

- `\g_@@_arrow_int` to count the arrows created in the environment ;
- `\g_@@_line_int` to count the lines of the `\halign` ;
- `\g_@@_col_int` to count the columns of the `\halign`.

These counters will be incremented in a cell of the `\halign` and, therefore, the incrementation must be global. However, we want to be able to include a `{WithArrows}` in another `{WithArrows}`. To do so, we must restore the previous value of these counters at the end of an environment `{WithArrows}` and we decide to manage a stack for each of these counters.

```
281 \seq_new:N \g_@@_arrow_int_seq
282 \int_new:N \g_@@_arrow_int
283 \seq_new:N \g_@@_line_int_seq
284 \int_new:N \g_@@_line_int
285 \seq_new:N \g_@@_col_int_seq
286 \int_new:N \g_@@_col_int
```

We will also use a “static” version of the counter of columns, called `\g_@@_static_col_int`. The value will be set directly in each cell of the array by an instruction in the template of the `\halign`. The aim of this programmation is to try to detect some use of `\omit` (which should be forbidden) in the cells of the `\halign`.

```
287 \seq_new:N \g_@@_static_col_int_seq
288 \int_new:N \g_@@_static_col_int
```

For the environment `{DispWithArrows}`, the comma list `\l_@@_tags_clist` will be the list of the numbers of lines to be tagged (with the counter `equation` of LaTeX). In fact, `\l_@@_tags_clist` may contain non negative integers but also three special values: `first`, `last` and `all`.

```
289 (*LaTeX)
290 \clist_new:N \l_@@_tags_clist
291 \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all }
```

During the execution of an environment `{DispWithArrows}`, if a row must be tagged, the (local) value of `\l_@@_tags_clist` will be put (by convention) to `all`.

```

292 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_test_if_to_tag:
293 {
294     \clist_if_in:NoT \l_@@_tags_clist \g_@@_line_int
295     { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } }
296 }
297 
```

If the user has given a value for the option `command-name` (at the global or at the *environment* level), a command with this name is defined locally in the environment with meaning `\@@_Arrow`. The initial value of the option `command-name` is “`Arrow`” and thus, by default, the name of the command will be `\Arrow`.

```

298 \str_new:N \l_@@_command_name_str
299 \str_set:Nn \l_@@_command_name_str { Arrow }

```

The string `\l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str` is only a string that will be displayed in some error messages. For example, if `command-name` is defined to be `Explanation`, this string will contain “`\Arrow alias \Explanation`”.

```

300 \str_new:N \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str
301 \str_set:Ne \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str { \token_to_str:N \Arrow }

```

The sequence `\g_@@_names_seq` will be the list of all the names of environments used (via the option `name`) in the document: two environments must not have the same name. However, it’s possible to use the option `allow-duplicate-names`.

```

302 \seq_new:N \g_@@_names_seq

```

The boolean `\l_@@_sbwi_bool` corresponds to the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`. Since the version 1.16 of `witharrows`, no vertical space is added between an `\item` of a LaTeX list and an environment `{DispWithArrows}`. With the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`, it’s possible to restore the previous behaviour (which corresponds to the standard behaviour of `{align}` of `amsmath`). `\l_@@_sbwi_bool` is the boolean corresponding to this option.

```

303 
```

$$\begin{aligned} 304 \text{\bool_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_sbwi_bool} \\ 305$$

$$\langle/\text{LaTeX}\rangle$$

$$\begin{aligned} 306 \text{\(*\text{LaTeX}\)} \\ 307 \text{\bool_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_tag_star_bool} \\ 308 \text{\bool_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_tag_next_line_bool} \\ 309 \text{\bool_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_qedhere_bool} \\ 310$$

$$\langle/\text{LaTeX}\rangle$$

$$\begin{aligned} 311 \text{\bool_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_in_first_columns_bool} \\ 312 \text{\bool_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_new_group_bool} \\ 313 \text{\bool_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_initial_r_bool} \\ 314 \text{\bool_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_final_r_bool} \\ 315 \text{\tl_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_initial_tl} \\ 316 \text{\tl_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_final_tl} \\ 317 \text{\int_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_nb_cols_int} \\ 318 \text{\tl_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_replace_left_brace_by_tl} \end{aligned}$$

The string `\l_@@_format_str` will contain the *format* of the array which is a succession of letters `r`, `c` and `l` specifying the type of the columns of the `\halign` (except the column for the labels of the equations in the environment `{DispWithArrows}`).

```

319 \str_new:N \l_@@_format_str

```

The option `\l_@@_subequations_bool` corresponds to the option `subequations`.

```

320 
```

$$\begin{aligned} 321 \text{\(*\text{LaTeX}\)} \\ 322 \text{\bool_new:N } &\text{\l\@@_subequations_bool} \\ 323$$

$$\langle/\text{LaTeX}\rangle$$

The dimension `\l_@@_arrow_width_dim` is only for the arrows of type `up` and `down`. A value of `\c_max_dim` means that the arrow has the maximal possible width. A value of 0 pt means that the the arrow has a width ajusted to the content of the node.

```
323 \dim_new:N \l_@@_arrow_width_dim
324 \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_arrow_width_dim \c_max_dim
```

The parameter `\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim` corresponds to option `radius_for_up_and_down`.

```
325 \dim_new:N \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim
326 \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim { 4 pt }
```

The sequence `\l_@@_o_arrows_seq` will be used to store the numbers of the arrows which are of type `o` (for *over*) (they are drawn *after* the other arrows).

```
327 \seq_new:N \l_@@_o_arrows_seq
```

The dimension `\l_@@_xoffset_for_o_arrows_dim` is the xoffset added when drawing an arrow of type `o` (for *over*).

```
328 \dim_new:N \l_@@_xoffset_for_o_arrows_dim
329 \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_xoffset_for_o_arrows_dim { 2 mm }
```

The following boolean corresponds to the key `right-overlap`. When that key is `false`, the overlap on the right of the arrows (and their labels) is computed and it is used to change the width of the environment `{WithArrows}` in order to include the arrows on the right (and, hence, there is no overlap).

```
330 \bool_new:N \l_@@_right_overlap_bool
331 \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_right_overlap_bool
```

12.7 The definition of the options

There are four levels where options can be set:

- with `\usepackage[...]{witharrows}`: this level will be called *package* level;
- with `\WithArrowsOptions{...}`: this level will be called *global* level³⁰;
- with `\begin{WithArrows}{...}`: this level will be called *environment* level;
- with `\Arrow{...}` (included in `code-after`): this level will be called *local* level.

When we scan a list of options, we want to be able to raise an error if two options of position (`ll`, `rl`, `i`, etc.) of the arrows are present. That's why we keep the first option of position in a variable called `\l_@@_previous_key_str`. The following function `\@@_eval_if_allowed:n` will execute its argument only if a first key of position has not been set (and raise an error elsewhere).

```
332 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_eval_if_allowed:n #1
333 {
334     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
335     {
336         \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_previous_key_str \l_keys_key_str
337         #1
338     }
339     { \@@_error:n { Incompatible-options } }
340 }
341 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_fix_pos_option:n #1
342     { \@@_eval_if_allowed:n { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int { #1 } } }
```

³⁰This level is called *global level* but the settings done by `\WithArrowsOptions` are local in the TeX sense: their scope corresponds to the current TeX group.

First a set of keys that will be used at the global or environment level of options.

```

343 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Global }
344 {
345   max-length-of-arrow .dim_set:N = \l_@@_max_length_of_arrow_dim ,
346   max-length-of-arrow .value_required:n = true ,
347   max-length-of-arrow .initial:n = 2 cm ,
348   ygap .dim_set:N = \l_@@_ygap_dim ,
349   ygap .initial:n = 0.4 ex ,
350   ygap .value_required:n = true ,
351   ystart .dim_set:N = \l_@@_ystart_dim ,
352   ystart .value_required:n = true ,
353   ystart .initial:n = 0.4 ex ,
354   more-columns .code:n =
355     \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn { Too-many-columns-in-WithArrows } { none } ,
356   more-columns .value_forbidden:n = true ,
357   command-name .code:n =
358     \str_set:Nn \l_@@_command_name_str { #1 }
359     \str_set:Ne \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str
360       { \c_underscore_str Arrow-alias~\c_underscore_str #1 } ,
361   command-name .value_required:n = true ,
362   tikz-code .tl_set:N = \l_@@_tikz_code_tl ,
363   tikz-code .initial:n = \draw-(#1)-to-node{#3}-(#2); ,
364   tikz-code .value_required:n = true ,
365   displaystyle .bool_set:N = \l_@@_displaystyle_bool ,
366   displaystyle .default:n = true ,
367   show-nodes .code:n =
368     \tikzset { @_node_style / .append-style = { draw , red } } ,
369   show-node-names .bool_set:N = \l_@@_show_node_names_bool ,
370   show-node-names .default:n = true ,
371   group .code:n =
372     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
373     {
374       \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { group }
375       \seq_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { xoffset }
376       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int { 7 }
377     }
378     { \@@_error:n { Incompatible-options } } ,
379   group .value_forbidden:n = true ,
380   groups .code:n =
381     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
382     {
383       \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { groups }
384       \seq_if_in:NnF \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { new-group }
385         { \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { new-group } }
386       \seq_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { xoffset }
387       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int { 6 }
388     }
389     { \@@_error:n { Incompatible-options } } ,
390   groups .value_forbidden:n = true ,
391   tikz .code:n = \tikzset { WithArrows / arrow / .append-style = { #1 } } ,
392   tikz .value_required:n = true ,
393   rr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n { 3 } ,
394   rr .value_forbidden:n = true ,
395   ll .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n { 1 } ,
396   ll .value_forbidden:n = true ,
397   rl .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n { 2 } ,
398   rl .value_forbidden:n = true ,
399   lr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n { 0 } ,
400   lr .value_forbidden:n = true ,
401   i .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n { 5 } ,
402   i .value_forbidden:n = true ,
403   xoffset .dim_set:N = \l_@@_xoffset_dim ,
404   xoffset .value_required:n = true ,

```

```

405 xoffset .initial:n = 3 mm ,
406 jot .dim_set:N = \jot ,
407 jot .value_required:n = true ,
408 interline .skip_set:N = \l_@@_interline_skip ,
409 start-adjust .dim_set:N = \l_@@_start_adjust_dim ,
410 start-adjust .initial:n = 0.4 ex ,
411 start-adjust .value_required:n = true ,
412 end-adjust .dim_set:N = \l_@@_end_adjust_dim ,
413 end-adjust .initial:n = 0.4 ex ,
414 end-adjust .value_required:n = true ,
415 adjust .meta:n = { start-adjust = #1 , end-adjust = #1 } ,
416 adjust .value_required:n = true ,
417 up-and-down .code:n = \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / up-and-down } { #1 } ,
418 up-and-down .value_required:n = true ,

```

With the option `no-arrows`, the arrows won't be drawn. However, the "first pass" of the arrows is done and some errors may be detected. The nullification of `\@@_draw_arrows:nn` is for the standard arrows and the nullification of `\@@_draw_arrow:nnn` is for "Arrow in code-after".

```

419 no-arrows .code:n =
420   \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_draw_arrows:nn \use_none:nn
421   \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_draw_arrow:nnn \use_none:nnn ,
422 no-arrows .value_forbidden:n = true
423 }

```

Now a set of keys specific to the environments `{WithArrows}` (and not `{DispWithArrow}`). Despite its name, this set of keys will also be used in `\WithArrowsOptions`.

```

424 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / WithArrowsSpecific }
425 {
426   t .code:n      = \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_env_int { 0 } ,
427   t .value_forbidden:n = true ,
428   c .code:n      = \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_env_int { 1 } ,
429   c .value_forbidden:n = true ,
430   b .code:n      = \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_env_int { 2 } ,
431   b .value_forbidden:n = true ,
432   right-overlap .bool_set:N      = \l_@@_right_overlap_bool ,
433   right-overlap .value_required:n = true
434 }

```

The following list of the (left) extensible delimiters of LaTeX is only for the validation of the key `replace-left-brace-by`.

```

435 \clist_new:N \g_@@_ext_delimiters_clist
436 \clist_gset:Nn \g_@@_ext_delimiters_clist
437 {
438   ., \{, (, [, \lbrace, \lbrack, \lgroup, \langle, \lmoustache, \lceil, \lfloor
439 }
440 (*LaTeX)
441 \AtBeginDocument
442 {
443   \bool_set_false:N \l_tmpa_bool
444   \IfPackageLoadedT { amsmath } { \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpa_bool }
445   \IfPackageLoadedT { unicode-math } { \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpa_bool }
446   \bool_if:NT \l_tmpa_bool
447     { \clist_gput_right:Nn \g_@@_ext_delimiters_clist { \lvert, \lVert } }
448 }
449 
```

Now a set of keys specific to the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` (and not `{WithArrows}`). Despite its name, this set of keys will also be used in `\WithArrowsOptions`.

```

450 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / DispWithArrowsSpecific }
451 {
452   fleqn .bool_set:N = \l_@@_fleqn_bool ,

```

```

453   fleqn .default:n = true ,
454   mathindent .skip_set:N = \l_@@_mathindent_skip ,
455   mathindent .initial:n = 25 pt ,
456   mathindent .value_required:n = true ,
457 <*LaTeX>
458   notag .code:n =
459     \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { true }
460       { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
461       { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } } ,
462   notag .default:n = true ,

```

Since the option `subequations` is an option which insert the environment `{DispWithArrows}` in an environment `{subequations}` of `amsmath`, we must test whether the package `amsmath` is loaded.

```

463   subequations .code:n =
464     \IfPackageLoadedTF { amsmath }
465       { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_subequations_bool }
466       { \err_amsmath_not_loaded: } ,
467   subequations .default:n = true ,
468   subequations .value_forbidden:n = true ,
469   nonumber .meta:n = notag ,
470   allow-multiple-labels .code:n =
471     \msg_redirect_name:nn { Multiple-labels } { none } ,
472   allow-multiple-labels .value_forbidden:n = true ,
473   tagged-lines .code:n =
474     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { #1 }
475     \clist_if_in:NnT \l_@@_tags_clist { first }
476     {
477       \clist_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { first }
478       \clist_put_left:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { 1 }
479     } ,
480   tagged-lines .value_required:n = true ,
481 </LaTeX>
482   wrap-lines .bool_set:N = \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool ,
483   wrap-lines .default:n = true ,
484   replace-left-brace-by .code:n =
485   {
486     \tl_set:Ne \l_tmpa_tl { \tl_head:n { #1 } }
487     \clist_if_in:NoTF
488       \g_@@_ext_delimiters_clist
489       \l_tmpa_tl
490       { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_replace_left_brace_by_tl { #1 } }
491       { \error:n { Bad-value-for-replace-brace-by } }
492   } ,
493   replace-left-brace-by .initial:n = \lbrace ,

```

Since the version 1.16 of `witharrows`, no vertical space is added between an `\item` of a `\LaTeX` list and an environment `{DispWithArrows}`. With the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`, it's possible to restore the previous behaviour (which corresponds to the standard behaviour of `{align}` of `amsmath`).

```

494 <*LaTeX>
495   standard-behaviour-with-items .bool_set:N = \l_@@_sbwi_bool ,
496   standard-behaviour-with-items .default:n = true
497 </LaTeX>
498 }

```

Now a set of keys which will be used in all the environments (but not in `\WithArrowsOptions`).

```

499 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Env }
500 {
501   name .code:n =

```

First, we convert the value in a `str` because the list of the names will be a list of `str`.

```

502   \str_set:Nn \l_tmpa_str { #1 }
503   \seq_if_in:NoTF \g_@@_names_seq \l_tmpa_str

```

```

504     { \@@_error:n { Duplicate-name } }
505     { \seq_gput_left:N \g_@@_names_seq \l_tmpa_str }
506     \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_name_str \l_tmpa_str ,
507     name .value_required:n = true ,
508     code-before .code:n = \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_code_before_tl { #1 } ,
509     code-before .value_required:n = true ,
510     CodeBefore .meta:n = { code-before = #1 } ,
511     code-after .code:n = \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_code_after_tl { #1 } ,
512     code-after .value_required:n = true ,
513     CodeAfter .meta:n = { code-after = #1 } ,
514     format .code:n =
515     \tl_if_empty:nTF { #1 }
516     { \@@_error:n { Invalid-option-format } }
517     {
518         \regex_if_match:nnTF { \A[rclRCL]*\Z } { #1 }
519         { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_format_str { #1 } }
520         { \@@_error:n { Invalid-option-format } }
521     },
522     format .value_required:n = true
523 }
```

Now, we begin the construction of the major sets of keys, named “`WithArrows / WithArrows`”, “`WithArrows / DispWithArrows`” and “`WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions`”. Each of these sets of keys will be completed after.

```

524 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows }
525 {
526     WithArrows .inherit:n =
527     {
528         WithArrows / Global ,
529         WithArrows / WithArrowsSpecific ,
530         WithArrows / Env
531     },
532     WithArrows / up-and-down .inherit:n = WithArrows / up-and-down ,
533     DispWithArrows .inherit:n =
534     {
535         WithArrows / DispWithArrowsSpecific ,
536         WithArrows / Global ,
537         WithArrows / Env ,
538     },
539     DispWithArrows / up-and-down .inherit:n = WithArrows / up-and-down ,
540     WithArrowsOptions .inherit:n =
541     {
542         WithArrows / Global ,
543         WithArrows / WithArrowsSpecific ,
544         WithArrows / DispWithArrowsSpecific ,
545     },
546     WithArrowsOptions / up-and-down .inherit:n = WithArrows / up-and-down
547 }
```

A sequence of `str` for the options available in `{WithArrows}`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

548 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq
549 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq
550 {
551     adjust, b, c, code-after, code-before, command-name,
552     right-overlap, displaystyle, end-adjust,
553     format, group, groups, i,
554     interline, jot, ll,
555     lr, max-length-of-arrow, more-columns, name,
556     no-arrows, rl, rr, up-and-down,
557     show-node-names, show-nodes, start-adjust,
558     t, tikz, tikz-code,
```

```

559     xoffset, ygap, ystart
560   }

561 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / WithArrows }
562 {
563   unknown .code:n =
564     \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq
565     \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~WithArrows }
566 }

567 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / DispWithArrows }
568 {
569   left-brace .tl_set:N = \l_@@_left_brace_tl ,
570   unknown .code:n =
571     \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq
572     \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~DispWithArrows } ,
573 }

```

A sequence of the options available in `{DispWithArrows}`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

574 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq
575 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq
576 {
577   code-after, code-before, command-name, tikz-code, adjust,
578   displaystyle, end-adjust, fleqn, group, format, groups, i, interline, jot,
579   left-brace, ll, lr, max-length-of-arrow, mathindent, name, no-arrows,
580   up-and-down, replace-left-brace-by, rl, rr, show-node-names,
581   show-nodes, start-adjust, tikz, wrap-lines, xoffset, ygap, ystart,
582 (*LaTeX)
583   allow-multiple-labels, tagged-lines, nonumber, notag
584 (/LaTeX)
585 }

586 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions }
587 {
588   allow-duplicate-names .code:n =
589     \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn { Duplicate-name } { none } ,
590   allow-duplicate-names .value_forbidden:n = true ,
591   xoffset-for-o-arrows .dim_set:N = \l_@@_xoffset_for_o_arrows_dim ,
592   xoffset-for-o-arrows .value_required:n = true ,
593   unknown .code:n =
594     \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq
595     \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~WithArrowsOptions }
596 }

```

A sequence of the options available in `\WithArrowsOptions`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

597 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq
598 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq
599 {
600   allow-duplicate-names, b, c, command-name, right_overlap,
601   more-columns, tikz-code, adjust,
602   displaystyle, end-adjust, fleqn, group, groups, i, interline, jot, ll, lr,
603   mathindent, max-length-of-arrow, no-arrows, up-and-down, rl, rr,
604   show-node-names, show-nodes, start-adjust, t, tikz, wrap-lines, xoffset,
605   xoffset-for-o-arrows, ygap, ystart,
606 (*LaTeX)
607   allow-multiple-labels, nonumber, notag, standard-behaviour-with-items,
608   tagged-lines
609 (/LaTeX)
610 }

```

The command `\@@_set_independent:` is a command without argument that will be used to specify that the arrow will be “independent” (of the potential groups of the option group or groups). This information will be stored in the field “status” of the arrow. Another possible value of the field “status” is “new-group”.

```

611 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_set_independent:
612 {
613     \str_if_eq:onF \l_keys_value_tl { NoValue }
614     { \@@_error:n { Value~for~a~key } }
615     \@@_set_independent_bis:
616 }
```

The command `\@@_set_independent_bis:` is the same as `\@@_set_independent:` except that the key may be used with a value.

```

617 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_set_independent_bis:
618 {
619     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
620     {
621         \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_previous_key_str \l_keys_key_str
622         \str_set:Nn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent }
623     }
624     { \@@_error:n { Incompatible~options~in~Arrow } }
625 }
```

The options of an individual arrow are parsed twice. The first pass is when the command `\Arrow` is read. The second pass is when the arrows are drawn (after the end of the environment `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`). Now, we present the set of keys for the first pass. The main goal is to extract informations which will be necessary during the scan of the arrows. For instance, we have to know if some arrows are “independent” or use the option “new-group”.

```

626 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / FirstPass }
627 {
628     jump .code:n =
629     \int_compare:nNnTF { #1 } > { \c_zero_int }
630     { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_jump_int { #1 } }
631     { \@@_error:n { Negative~jump } } ,
632     jump .value_required:n = true,
633     rr .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
634     ll .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
635     rl .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
636     lr .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
637     i .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
638     rr .default:n = NoValue ,
639     ll .default:n = NoValue ,
640     rl .default:n = NoValue ,
641     lr .default:n = NoValue ,
642     i .default:n = NoValue ,
643     new-group .value_forbidden:n = true ,
644     new-group .code:n =
645     \int_compare:nTF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 6 }
646     { \str_set:Nn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { new-group } }
647     { \@@_error:n { new-group~without~groups } } ,
648     o .code:n =
649     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
650     {
651         \int_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } < { 6 }
652         { \@@_error:n { invalid~key~o } }
653         {
654             \str_set:Nn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { over }
655             \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_previous_key_str \l_keys_key_str
656         }
657     }
658     { \@@_error:n { Incompatible~options~in~Arrow } } ,
```

The other keys don't give any information necessary during the scan of the arrows. However, you try to detect errors and that's why all the keys are listed in this keys set. An unknown key will be detected at the point of the command `\Arrow` and not at the end of the environment.

```

659 tikz-code .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
660 tikz-code .value_required:n = true ,
661 tikz .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
662 tikz .value_required:n = true ,
663 start-adjust .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
664 start-adjust .value_required:n = true ,
665 end-adjust .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
666 end-adjust .value_required:n = true ,
667 adjust .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
668 adjust .value_required:n = true ,
669 xoffset .code:n =
670 unknown .code:n =
671     \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq
672     \seq_if_in:NoTF \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq \l_keys_key_str
673     {
674         \str_set:Nn \l_tmpa_str
675         { ~However,~this~key~can~be~used~in~the~options~of~{WithArrows}. }
676     }
677     { \str_clear:N \l_tmpa_str }
678 \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~in~Arrow }
679 }
```

A sequence of the options available in `\Arrow`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

680 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq
681 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq
682 {
683     adjust, end-adjust, i, jump, ll, lr, o , rl, rr, start-adjust, tikz,
684     tikz-code, xoffset
685 }

686 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n #1
687 {
688     \str_if_empty:NT \l_@@_previous_key_str
689     {
690         \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_previous_key_str \l_keys_key_str
691         \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int { #1 }
692     }
693 }
```

The options of the individual commands `\Arrows` are scanned twice. The second pass is just before the drawing of the arrow. In this set of keys, we don't put an item for the unknown keys because an unknown key would have been already detected during the first pass.

```

694 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / SecondPass }
695 {
696     tikz-code .tl_set:N = \l_@@_tikz_code_tl ,
697     tikz-code .initial:n = \draw-(#1)~to~node{#3}~-(#2)~; ,
698     tikz .code:n = \tikzset { WithArrows / arrow / .append~style = { #1 } } ,
699     rr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 3 ,
700     ll .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 1 ,
701     rl .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 2 ,
702     lr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 0 ,
703     i .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 5 ,
704     o .code:n = \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { o } ,
```

The option `xoffset` is not allowed when the option `group` or the option `groups` is used except, if the arrow is independent or if there is only one arrow.

```

705 xoffset .code:n =
706   \bool_lazy_all:nTF
707   {
708     { \int_compare_p:nNn { \g_@@_arrow_int } > { 1 } }
709     { \int_compare_p:nNn { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } > { 5 } }
710     { ! \str_if_eq_p:on \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent } }
711   }
712   { \@@_error:n { Option-xoffset-forbidden } }
713   { \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_xoffset_dim { #1 } },
714 xoffset .value_required:n = true ,
715 start-adjust .dim_set:N = \l_@@_start_adjust_dim,
716 end-adjust .dim_set:N = \l_@@_end_adjust_dim,
717 adjust .code:n =
718   \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_start_adjust_dim { #1 }
719   \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_end_adjust_dim { #1 },
720 }

```

\WithArrowsOptions is the command of the `witharrows` package to fix options at the document level. It's possible to fix in \WithArrowsOptions some options specific to `{WithArrows}` (in contrast with `{DispWithArrows}`) or specific to `{DispWithArrows}` (in contrast with `{WithArrows}`). That's why we have constructed a set of keys specific to \WithArrowsOptions.

```

721 (*LaTeX)
722 \NewDocumentCommand \WithArrowsOptions { m }
723 (/LaTeX)
724 (*plain-TeX)
725 \cs_set_protected:Npn \WithArrowsOptions #1
726 (/plain-TeX)
727 {
728   \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
729   \keys_set:mn { WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions } { #1 }
730 }

```

12.8 The command \Arrow

In fact, the internal command is not named \Arrow but \@@_Arrow. Usually, at the beginning of an environment `{WithArrows}`, \Arrow is set to be equivalent to \@@_Arrow. However, the user can change the name with the option `command-name` and the user command for \@@_Arrow will be different. This mechanism can be useful when the user already has a command named \Arrow that he still wants to use in the environments `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

731 (*LaTeX)
732 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow
733   { \@@_collect_options:n { \@@_Arrow_iii } }
734 \bool_if:NTF \g_@@_beamer_bool
735   {
736     \NewDocumentCommand \@@_Arrow_iii { m d < > m ! O { } }
737     {
738       \tl_if_no_value:nTF { #2 }
739       { \@@_Arrow_ii { #1 } { #3 } [ #4 ] }
740       { \only <#2> { \@@_Arrow_ii { #1 } { #3 } [ #4 ] } }
741     }
742   }
743   {
744     \NewDocumentCommand \@@_Arrow_iii { m m ! O { } }
745     { \@@_Arrow_ii { #1 } { #2 } [ #3 ] }
746   }
747 \NewDocumentCommand \@@_Arrow_ii { m m ! O { } }
748 (/LaTeX)
749 (*plain-TeX)
750 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow
751   {

```

```

752 \peek_meaning:NTF [
753   { \@@_Arrow_i }
754   { \@@_Arrow_i [ ] }
755 ]
756 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_i [ #1 ] #2
757 {
758   \peek_meaning:NTF [
759     { \@@_Arrow_ii [ #1 ] { #2 } }
760     { \@@_Arrow_ii [ #1 ] { #2 } [ ] }
761   ]
762 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_ii [ #1 ] #2 [ #3 ]
763 
```

The counter `\g_@@_arrow_int` counts the arrows in the environment. The incrementation must be global (`gincr`) because the command `\Arrow` will be used in the cell of a `\halign`. It's recalled that we manage a stack for this counter.

```
765 \int_gincr:N \g_@@_arrow_int
```

We will construct a global property list to store the informations of the considered arrow. The six fields of this property list are “initial”, “final”, “status”, “options”, “label” and “input-line”. In order to compute the value of “final” (the destination row of the arrow), we have to take into account a potential option `jump`. In order to compute the value of the field “status”, we have to take into account options `ll`, `rl`, `rr`, `lr`, etc. or `new-group`.

We will do that job with a first analyze of the options of the command `\Arrow` with a dedicated set of keys called `WithArrows/Arrow/FirstPass`.

```

766 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
767 \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / FirstPass } { #1 , #3 }
768 \prop_clear_new_linked:N \l_tmpa_linked_prop

```

We construct now a global property list to store the informations of the considered arrow with the six fields “initial”, “final”, “status”, “options”, “label” and “input-line”.

1. First, the row from which the arrow starts:

```
769 \prop_put:NnV \l_tmpa_linked_prop { initial } \g_@@_line_int
```

2. The row where the arrow ends (that's why it was necessary to analyze the key `jump`):

```

770 \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int { \g_@@_line_int + \l_@@_jump_int }
771 \prop_put:NnV \l_tmpa_linked_prop { final } \l_tmpa_int

```

3. The “status” of the arrow, with 4 possible values: `empty`, `independent`, `new-group` or `over`.

```
772 \prop_put:Nno \l_tmpa_linked_prop { status } { \l_@@_status_arrow_str }
```

4. The options of the arrow (it's a token list):

```
773 \prop_put:Nnn \l_tmpa_linked_prop { options } { #1 , #3 }
```

5. The label of the arrow (it's also a token list):

```
774 \prop_put:Nnn \l_tmpa_linked_prop { label } { #2 }
```

6. The number of the line where the command `\Arrow` is issued in the TeX source (as of now, this is only useful for some error messages).

```
775 \prop_put:Nne \l_tmpa_linked_prop { input-line } { \msg_line_number: }
```

7. The total width of the arrow (with the label)... but we don't know it now and that's why we put `0 pt`. There are used for the arrows of type `o`.

```
776 \prop_put:Nnn \l_tmpa_linked_prop { width } { 0 pt }
```

The property list has been created in a local variable for convenience. Now, it will be stored in a global variable indicating both the position-in-the-tree and the number of the arrow.

```

777   \prop_gclear_new_linked:c
778     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \g_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
779   \prop_gset_eq:cN
780     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \g_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
781     \l_tmpa_linked_prop
782 }
```

The command `\Arrow` (or the corresponding command with a name given by the user with the option `command-name`) will be available only in the last column of the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`. In the other columns, the command will be linked to the following command `\@@_Arrow_first_columns:` which will raise an error.

```

783 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_first_columns:
784   { \@@_error:n { Arrow-not-in-last-column } \@@_Arrow }
```

12.9 The environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`

12.9.1 Code before the `\halign`

The command `\@@_pre_halign:n` is a code common to the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`. The argument is the list of options given to the environment.

```
785 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_pre_halign:n #1
```

First, the initialization of `\l_@@_type_env_str` which is the name of the encompassing environment. In fact, this token list is used only in the error messages.

```

786 {
787 <*LaTeX>
788   \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_type_env_str
789   \str_set:NV \l_@@_type_env_str \currenvir
790 </LaTeX>
```

We deactivate the potential externalization of Tikz. The Tikz elements created by `witharrows` can't be externalized since they are created in Tikz pictures with `overlay` and `remember picture`.

```

791 \cs_if_exist:NT \tikz@library@external@loaded
792   { \tikzset { external / export = false } }

793 \tikzset { arrows = [ flex ] } % https://texnique.fr/osqa/questions/12199
```

The token list `\l_@@_name_str` will contain the potential name of the environment (given with the option `name`). This name will be used to create aliases for the names of the nodes.

```
794 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_name_str
```

The parameter `\l_@@_status_arrow_str` will be used to store the "status" of an individual arrow. It will be used to fill the field "status" in the property list describing an arrow.

```
795 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_status_arrow_str
```

The dimension `\l_@@_x_dim` will be used to compute the *x*-value for some vertical arrows when one of the options `i`, `group` and `groups` (values 5, 6 and 7 of `\l_@@_pos_arrow_int`) is used.

```
796 \dim_zero_new:N \l_@@_x_dim
```

The variable `\l_@@_input_line_str` will be used only to store, for each command `\Arrow` the line (in the TeX file) where the command is issued. This information will be stored in the field "input-line" of the arrow. As of now, this information is used only in some error messages.

```
797 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_input_line_str
```

Initialization of `\g_@@_arrow_int`, `\g_@@_line_int`, `\g_@@_col_int` and `\g_@@_static_col_int`. However, we have to save their previous values with the stacks created for this end.

```

798  \seq_gput_right:NV \g_@@_arrow_int_seq \g_@@_arrow_int
799  \int_gzero:N \g_@@_arrow_int
800  \seq_gput_right:NV \g_@@_line_int_seq \g_@@_line_int
801  \int_gzero:N \g_@@_line_int
802  \seq_gput_right:NV \g_@@_col_int_seq \g_@@_col_int
803  \int_gzero:N \g_@@_col_int
804  \seq_gput_right:NV \g_@@_static_col_int_seq \g_@@_static_col_int
805  \int_gzero:N \g_@@_static_col_int

```

In the preamble of the `\halign`, there will be *two* counters of the columns. The aim of this programming is to detect the use of a command `\omit` in a cell of the `\halign` (it should be forbidden). For example, in the part of the preamble concerning the third column (if there is a third column in the environment), we will have the following instructions :

```

\int_gincr:N \g_@@_col_int
\int_set:Nn \g_@@_static_col_int { 3 }

```

The counter `\g_@@_col_int` is incremented dynamically and the second is static. If the user has used a command `\omit`, the dynamic incrementation is not done in the cell and, at the end of the row, the difference between the counters may infer the presence of `\omit` at least once.

We also have to update the position on the nesting tree.

```

806  \seq_gput_right:Nn \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq { 1 }

```

The nesting tree is used to create a prefix which will be used in the names of the Tikz nodes and in the names of the arrows (each arrow is a property list of six fields). If we are in the second environment `{WithArrows}` nested in the third environment `{WithArrows}` of the document, the prefix will be 3-2 (although the position in the tree is [3, 2, 1] since such a position always ends with a 1). First, we do a copy of the position-in-the-tree and then we pop the last element of this copy (in order to drop the last 1).

```

807  \seq_set_eq:NN \l_tmpa_seq \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq
808  \seq_pop_right:NN \l_tmpa_seq \l_tmpa_tl
809  \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_prefix_str
810  \str_set:Ne \l_@@_prefix_str
811  { \seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq { - } { - } { - } }

```

We define the command `\\\` to be the command `\@_cr`: (defined below).

```

812  \cs_set_eq:NN \\ \@_cr:
813  \dim_zero:N \mathsurround

```

These counters will be used later as variables.

```

814  \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_initial_int
815  \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_final_int
816  \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_arrow_int
817  \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_pos_of_arrow_int
818  \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_jump_int

```

The counter `\l_@@_jump_int` corresponds to the option `jump`. Now, we set the initial value for this option.

```

819  \int_set:Nn \l_@@_jump_int { 1 }

```

The string `\l_@@_format_str` corresponds to the option `format`. Now, we set the initial value for this option.

```

820  \str_set:Nn \l_@@_format_str { rL }

```

In (the last column of) `{DispWithArrows}`, it's possible to put several labels (for the same number of equation). That's why these labels will be stored in a sequence `\l_@@_labels_seq`.

```

821  (*LaTeX)
822  \seq_clear_new:N \l_@@_labels_seq

```

```

823     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool
824     ⟨/LaTeX⟩

```

The value corresponding to the key `interline` is put to zero before the treatment of the options of the environment.³¹

```

825     \skip_zero:N \l_@@_interline_skip

```

The value corresponding to the key `code-before` is put to nil before the treatment of the options of the environment, because, of course, we don't want the code executed at the beginning of all the nested environments `{WithArrows}`. Idem for `code-after`.

```

826     \tl_clear_new:N \l_@@_code_before_tl
827     \tl_clear_new:N \l_@@_code_after_tl

```

We process the options given to the environment `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

828     \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
829     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
830     { \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / WithArrows } { #1 } }
831     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
832     { \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / DispWithArrows } { #1 } }

```

The dimension `\g_@@_overlap_x_dim` will be the maximal overlap on the right of the arrows (and their labels) drawn in the environment `{WithArrows}`. The dimension `\l_@@_delta_x_dim` will be the difference of abscissa between the right side of the alignment (`\halign`) and the left side of the arrow.

```

833     \bool_if:NF \l_@@_right_overlap_bool
834     {
835         \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
836         {
837             \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_overlap_x_dim
838             \dim_zero_new:N \l_@@_delta_x_dim
839         }
840     }

```

Now we link the command `\Arrow` (or the corresponding command with a name given by the user with the option `command-name`: that's why the following line must be after the loading of the options) to the command `\@@_Arrow_first_columns`: which will raise an error.

```

841     \cs_set_eq:cN \l_@@_command_name_str \@@_Arrow_first_columns:

```

It's only in the last column of the environment that it will be linked to the command `\@@_Arrow`:

The counter `\l_@@_nb_cols_int` is the number of columns in the `\halign` (excepted the column for the labels of equations in `{DispWithArrows}` and excepted eventuals other columns in `{WithArrows}` allowed by the option `more-columns`).

```

842     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_nb_cols_int { \str_count:N \l_@@_format_str }

```

Be careful! The following counter `\g_@@_col_int` will be used for two usages:

- during, the construction of the preamble of the `\halign`, it will be used as counter for the number of the column under construction in the preamble (since the preamble is constructed backwards, `\g_@@_col_int` will go decreasing from `\l_@@_nb_cols_int` to 1) ;
- once the preamble constructed, the primitive `\halign` is executed, and, in each row of the `\halign`, the counter `\g_@@_col_int` will be increased from column to column.

```

843     \int_gset_eq:NN \g_@@_col_int \l_@@_nb_cols_int

```

³¹ It's recalled that, by design, the option `interline` of an environment doesn't apply in the nested environments.

We convert the format in a sequence because we use it as a stack (with the top of the stack at the end of the sequence) in the construction of the preamble.

```
844 \seq_clear_new:N \l_@@_format_seq
845 \seq_set_split:NnV \l_@@_format_seq { } \l_@@_format_str
```

If the option `footnote` or the option `footnotehyper` is used, then we extract the footnotes with an environment `{savenotes}` (of the package `footnote` or the package `footnotehyper`).

```
846 (*LaTeX)
847   \bool_if:NT \g_@@_footnote_bool { \begin{ { savenotes } } }
848 
```

We execute the code `\l_@@_code_before_tl` of the option `code-before` of the environment after the potential `\begin{ { savenotes } }` and, symmetrically, we will execute the `\l_@@_code_after_tl` before the potential `\end{ { savenotes } }` (we have a good reason for the last point: we want to extract the footnotes of the arrows executed in the `code-after`).

```
849 \l_@@_code_before_tl
850 (*LaTeX)
851   \cs_set_eq:NN \notag \@@_notag:
852   \cs_set_eq:NN \nonumber \@@_nonumber:
853   \cs_set_eq:NN \tag \@@_tag
854   \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_old_label \label
855   \cs_set_eq:NN \label \@@_label:n
856   \cs_set_eq:NN \tagnextline \@@_tagnextline:
857 
```

This is the end of `\@@_pre_halign:n`.

12.9.2 The construction of the preamble of the `\halign`

The control sequence `\@@_construct_halign:` will “start” the `\halign` and the preamble. In fact, it constructs all the preamble excepted the end of the last column (more precisely: except the part concerning the construction of the left node and the right node).

The same function `\@@_construct_halign:` will be used both for the environment `{WithArrows}` and the environment `{DispWithArrows}`.

Several important points must be noted concerning that construction of the preamble.

- The construction of the preamble is done by reading backwards the format `\l_@@_format_str` and adding the corresponding tokens in the input stream of TeX. That means that the part of the preamble concerning the last cell will be constructed first.
- The function `\@@_construct_halign:` is recursive in order to treat successively all the letters of the preamble.
- Each part of the preamble is created with a `\use:e` function. This expansion of the preamble gives the ability of controlling which parts of the code will be expanded during the construction of the preamble (other parts will be expanded and executed only during the execution of the `\halign`).
- The counter `\g_@@_col_int` is used during the loop of the construction of the preamble but, it will also appears in the preamble (we could have chosen two different counters but this way saves a counter).

```
859 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_construct_halign:
860 {
861   \seq_pop_right:NNTF \l_@@_format_seq \l_@@_type_col_str
862   {
```

Here is the `\use:e` which is fundamental: it will really construct the part of the preamble corresponding to a column by expanding only some parts of the following code.

```
863   \use:e
864   {
```

Before the recursive call of `\@@_construct_halign:`, we decrease the integer `\g_@@_col_bool`. But, during the construction of the column which is constructed first (that is to say which is the last column of the `\halign`), it is *not* lowered because `\int_decr:N`, which is protected, won't be expanded by the `\use:e`.

We begin the construction of a generic column.

```

865     \int_gdecr:N \g_@@_col_int
866     \@@_construct_halign:
867     \int_compare:nNnT { \g_@@_col_int } = { \l_@@_nb_cols_int }
868     {

```

We redefine the command `\Arrow` (or the name given to the corresponding command by the option `command-name`) in each cell of the last column. The braces around `\l_@@_command_name_str` are mandatory because `\l_@@_command_name_str` will be expanded by the `\use:e` and the command `\cs_set_eq:cN` must still be efficient during the execution of the `\halign`.

```

869             \cs_set_eq:cN { \l_@@_command_name_str } \@@_Arrow
870   {*LaTeX}
871           \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
872           {

```

The command `\@@_test_if_to_tag:` (which is protected and, thus, will not be expanded during the construction of the preamble) will test, at each row, whether the current row must be tagged (and the tag will be put in the very last column).

```
873 \@@_test_if_to_tag:
```

The command `\@@_set_qedhere:` will do a redefinition of `\qedhere` in each cell of the last column.

```

874         \IfPackageLoadedT { amsmath } { \@@_set_qedhere: }
875         }
876   /LaTeX)
877         }
878         \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_col_str { c } { \hfil }
879         \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_col_str { C } { \hfil }
880         \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_col_str { r } { \hfill }
881         \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_col_str { R } { \hfill }
882         \int_gincr:N \g_@@_col_int
883         \int_gset:Nn \g_@@_static_col_int { \int_use:N \g_@@_col_int }
884         $ %
885         \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_col_str { C } { {} }
886         \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_col_str { L } { {} }
887         \bool_if:NT \l_@@_displaystyle_bool { \displaystyle }
888         ##
889         \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_col_str { C } { {} }
890         \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_col_str { R } { {} }
891         $ %
892         \int_compare:nNnTF { \g_@@_col_int } = { \l_@@_nb_cols_int }
893             \@@_construct_nodes:
894             {

```

The following glue (`\hfil`) will be added only if we are not in the last cell because, in the last cell, a glue (=skip) is added between the nodes (in `\@@_construct_nodes:`).

```

895             \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_col_str { 1 } { \hfil }
896             \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_col_str { L } { \hfil }
897             \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_col_str { c } { \hfil }
898             \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_col_str { C } { \hfil }
899             \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool { \tabskip = \c_zero_skip }
900             &
901             }
902             }
903             }

```

Now the tokens that will be inserted after the analyze of all the tokens of the format: here is the token `\halign`.

```

904             {
905             \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
906             {

```

```

907         \ialign
908             \bgroup
909         }
910     {
911         \halign to \l_@@_linewidth_dim
912             \bgroup
913                 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_fleqn_bool
914                     { \skip_horizontal:N \l_@@_mathindent_skip }
915             }
916         \int_gincr:N \g_@@_line_int
917         \int_gzero:N \g_@@_col_int
918         \tl_if_eq:NNF \l_@@_left_brace_tl \c_novalue_tl
919             {
920                 \skip_horizontal:n
921                     { \box_wd:N \l_@@_left_brace_box + \l_@@_delim_wd_dim }
922             }
923         \strut
924     }
925 }
```

The command `\@@_construct_nodes:` is only for the lisibility of the code because, in fact, it is used only once. It constructs the “left node” and the “right node” at the end of each row of the arrow.

```

926 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_construct_nodes:
927 {
```

We create the “left node” of the line (when using macros in Tikz node names, the macros have to be fully expandable: here, `\int_use:N` is fully expandable).

```

928 \tikz [ remember~picture , overlay ]
929     \node
930     [
931         node~contents = { } ,
932         @@_node_style ,
933         name = wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - l ,
934     ]
935 ;
936 \hfil
```

Now, after the `\hfil`, we create the “right node” and, if the option `show-node-names` is raised, the name of the node is written in the document (useful for debugging).

```

937 \tikz [ remember~picture , overlay ]
938     \node
939     [
940         node~contents = { } ,
941         @@_node_style ,
942         name = wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - r ,
943     ]
944 ;
945 \str_if_empty:NF \l_@@_name_str
946 {
947     \pgfpicture
948     \pgfnodealias
949         { \l_@@_name_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - l }
950         { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - l }
951     \pgfnodealias
952         { \l_@@_name_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - r }
953         { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - r }
954     \endpgfpicture
955 }
956 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_show_node_names_bool
957 {
958     \hbox_overlap_right:n
959         { \small wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - r }
```

```

960         }
961     }

```

12.9.3 The environment {WithArrows}

```

962 (*LaTeX)
963 \NewDocumentEnvironment { WithArrows } { ! O { } }
964 (/LaTeX)
965 (*plain-TeX)
966 \cs_new_protected:Npn \WithArrows
967 {
968     \group_begin:
969     \peek_meaning:NTF [
970         { \WithArrows_i }
971         { \WithArrows_i [ ] }
972     ]
973     \cs_new_protected:Npn \WithArrows_i [ #1 ]
974     (/plain-TeX)
975     {
976         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
977         \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_in_DisپWithArrows_bool
978     (*plain-TeX)
979         \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_type_env_str
980         \str_set:Nn \l_@@_type_env_str { WithArrows }
981     (/plain-TeX)
982         \c@_pre_halign:n { #1 }
983         \if_mode_math: \else:
984             \c@_error:n { WithArrows~outside~math~mode }
985         \fi:
986         \box_clear_new:N \l_@@_env_box
987         \hbox_set:Nw \l_@@_env_box

```

The environment begins with a `\vtop`, a `\vcenter` or a `\vbox32` depending of the value of `\l_@@_pos_env_int` (fixed by the options `t`, `c` or `b`). The environment `{WithArrows}` must be used in math mode³³ and therefore, we can use `\vcenter`.

```

988 \int_compare:nNnT { \l_@@_pos_env_int } = { 1 }
989     { $ } % $
990 \int_case:nn { \l_@@_pos_env_int } { 0 \vtop 1 \vcenter 2 \vbox }
991 \bgroup

```

The command `\spread@equation` is the command used by `amsmath` in the beginning of an alignment to fix the interline. When used, it becomes no-op. However, it's possible to use `witharrows` without `amsmath` since we have redefined `\spread@equation` (if it is not defined yet).

```

992 \spread@equation

```

We begin the `\halign` and the preamble. During the construction of the preamble, `\l_tmpa_int` will be incremented during each column constructed.

```

993 \c@_construct_halign:

```

In fact, the construction of the preamble is not finished. We add a little more.

An environment `{WithArrows}` should have a number of columns equal to the length of its format (by default, 2 since the default format is `r1`). Nevertheless, if the user wants to use more columns (without arrows) it's possible with the option `more-columns`.

```

994 &&
995 \c@_error:n { Too-many-columns-in-WithArrows }

```

³²Notice that the use of `\vtop` seems color-safe here...

³³An error is raised if the environment is used outside math mode.

```

996   $ % $
997   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_displaystyle_bool { \displaystyle }
998   { ## }
999   $ % $
1000  \cr
1001 }

```

We begin the second part of the environment `{WithArrows}`. We have three `\egroup`: one for the `\halign`, one for the `\vtop` (or `\vcenter` or `\vbox`) and one for the `\hbox_set:Nn \l_@@_env_box`.

```

1002 <*plain-TeX>
1003 \cs_new_protected:Npn \endWithArrows
1004 </plain-TeX>
1005 {
1006   \\
1007   \egroup
1008   \egroup
1009   \int_compare:nNnT { \l_@@_pos_env_int } = { 1 }
1010   { $ } % $
1011   \hbox_set_end:
1012   \@@_post_halign:

```

We want to add white space on the right side of the box in order to take into account the arrows and their labels.

```

1013 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_right_overlap_bool
1014 {
1015   \box_set_wd:Nn \l_@@_env_box
1016   { \g_@@_overlap_x_dim + \box_wd:N \l_@@_env_box }
1017 }
1018 \box_use_drop:N \l_@@_env_box

```

If the option `footnote` or the option `footnotehyper` is used, then we extract the footnotes with an environment `{footnote}` (of the package `footnote` or the package `footnotehyper`).

```

1019 <*LaTeX>
1020   \bool_if:NT \g_@@_footnote_bool { \end { savenotes } }
1021 </LaTeX>
1022 <*plain-TeX>
1023   \group_end:
1024 </plain-TeX>
1025 }

```

This is the end of the environment `{WithArrows}`.

12.9.4 After the construction of the `\halign`

The command `\@@_post_halign:` is a code common to the second part of the environment `{WithArrows}` and the environment `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1026 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_post_halign:

```

The command `\WithArrowsRightX` is not used by `witharrows`. It's only a convenience given to the user.

```

1027 {
1028   \cs_set:Npn \WithArrowsRightX { \g_@@_right_x_dim }

```

We use `\normalbaselines` of plain-TeX because we have used `\spread@equation` (of `amsmath` or defined directly if `amsmath` is not loaded) and you don't want `\spread@equation` to have effects in the labels of the arrows.

```

1029 \normalbaselines

```

If there is really arrows in the environment, we draw the arrows.

```

1030 \int_if_zero:nF \g_@@_arrow_int
1031 {

```

If there is only one arrow, the options `group` and `groups` do not really make sense and it will be quicker to act as if we were in option `i` (moreover, it allows the option `xoffset` for the unique arrow).

```

1032     \int_compare:nNnT { \g_@@_arrow_int } = { 1 }
1033     {
1034         \int_compare:nNnT { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } > { 5 }
1035         { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int { 5 } }
1036     }
1037     \@@_scan_arrows:
1038 }
```

We will execute the code specified in the option `code-after`, after some settings.

```

1039 \group_begin:
1040     \tikzset { every-picture / .style = @@_standard }
```

The command `\WithArrowsNbLines` is not used by `witharrows`. It's only a convenience given to the user.

```
1041     \cs_set:Npn \WithArrowsNbLines { \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int }
```

The command `\MultiArrow` is available in `code-after`, and we have a special version of `\Arrow`, called “`\Arrow in code-after`” in the documentation.³⁴

```

1042     \cs_set_eq:NN \MultiArrow \@@_MultiArrow:nn
1043     \cs_set_eq:cN \l_@@_command_name_str \@@_Arrow_code_after
1044     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_code_after_bool
1045     \l_@@_code_after_tl
1046 \group_end:
```

We update the position-in-the-tree. First, we drop the last component and then we increment the last element.

```

1047     \seq_gpop_right:NN \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq \l_tmpa_tl
1048     \seq_gpop_right:NN \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq \l_tmpa_tl
1049     \seq_gput_right:Ne \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq
1050     { \int_eval:n { \l_tmpa_tl + 1 } }
```

We update the value of the counter `\g_@@_last_env_int`. This counter is used only by the user function `\WithArrowsLastEnv`.

```

1051     \int_compare:nNnT { \seq_count:N \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq } = { 1 }
1052     { \int_gincr:N \g_@@_last_env_int }
```

Finally, we restore the previous values of the counters `\g_@@_arrow_int`, `\g_@@_col_int` and `\g_@@_static_col_int`. It is recalled that we manage four stacks in order to be able to do such a restoration.

```

1053     \seq_gpop_right:NN \g_@@_arrow_int_seq \l_tmpa_tl
1054     \int_gset:Nn \g_@@_arrow_int \l_tmpa_tl
1055     \seq_gpop_right:NN \g_@@_line_int_seq \l_tmpa_tl
1056     \int_gset:Nn \g_@@_line_int \l_tmpa_tl
1057     \seq_gpop_right:NN \g_@@_col_int_seq \l_tmpa_tl
1058     \int_gset:Nn \g_@@_col_int \l_tmpa_tl
1059     \seq_gpop_right:NN \g_@@_static_col_int_seq \l_tmpa_tl
1060     \int_gset:Nn \g_@@_static_col_int \l_tmpa_tl
1061 }
```

That's the end of the command `\@@_post_halign::`.

³⁴As of now, `\MultiArrow` has no option, and that's why its internal name is a name of L3 with the signature `:nn` whereas `\Arrow in code-after` provides options and has the name of a function defined with `\NewDocumentCommand`.

12.9.5 The command of end of row

We give now the definition of `\@_cr`: which is the definition of `\` in an environment `{WithArrows}`. The two commands `\group_align_safe_begin`: and `\group_align_safe_end`: are specifically designed for this purpose: test the token that follows in an `\halign` structure.

First, we remove an eventual token `*` (just after the `\`: there should not be space between the two) since the commands `\\` and `*` are equivalent in an environment `{WithArrows}` (an environment `{WithArrows}`, like an environment `{aligned}` of `amsmath`, is always unbreakable).

```
1062 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@_cr:
1063 {
1064     \scan_stop:
```

We try to detect some `\omit` (as of now, an `\omit` in the last column is not detected).

```
1065     \int_compare:nNnF { \g @_col_int } = { \g @_static_col_int }
1066         { \@_error:n { omit~probably~used } }
1067     \prg_replicate:nn { \l @_nb_cols_int - \g @_static_col_int } { & { } }
1068     \group_align_safe_begin:
1069     \peek_meaning_remove:NTF * \@_cr_i: \@_cr_i:
1070 }
```

Then, we peek the next token to see if it's a `[`. In this case, the command `\\` has an optional argument which is the vertical skip (=glue) to put.

```
1071 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@_cr_i:
1072     { \peek_meaning:NTF [ \@_cr_ii: { \@_cr_ii: [ \c_zero_dim ] } }
```

Now, we test if the next token is the token `\end`. Indeed, we want to test if the following tokens are `\end{WithArrows}` (or `\end{Code}`, etc). In this case, we raise an error because the user must not put `\\` at the end of its alignment.

```
1073 (*LaTeX)
1074 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@_cr_ii: [ #1 ]
1075 {
1076     \peek_remove_spaces:n
1077     {
1078         \peek_meaning:NTF \end
1079         {
1080             \@_cr_iii:n { #1 }
```

The analysis of the argument of the token `\end` must be after the `\group_align_safe_end`: which is the beginning of `\@_cr_iii:n`.

```
1081         \@_analyze_end:Nn
1082     }
1083     { \@_cr_iii:n { #1 } }
1084 }
1085 }

1086 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@_cr_iii:n #1
1087 
```

```
1088 (*plain-TeX)
1089 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@_cr_ii: [ #1 ]
1090 
```

```
1091 {
1092     \group_align_safe_end:
```

For the environment `{DispWithArrows}`, the behaviour of `\\` is different because we add the last column which is the column for the tag (number of the equation). Even if there is no tag, this column is used for the v-nodes.³⁵

```
1093 \bool_if:NT \l @_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
```

³⁵The v-nodes are used to compute the abscissa of the right margin, used by the option `wrap-lines`.

At this stage, we know that we have a tag to put if (and only if) the value of `\l_@@_tags_clist` is the comma list `all` (only one element). Maybe, previously, the value of `\l_@@_tags_clist` was, for example, `1, last` (which means that only the first line and the last line must be tagged). However, in this case, the comparison with the number of line has been done before and, now, if we are in a line to tag, the value of `\l_@@_tags_clist` is `all`.

```
1094     {
1095     <*LaTeX>
1096         \clist_if_in:NnTF \l_@@_tags_clist { all }
1097         {
```

Here, we can't use `\refstepcounter{equation}` because if the user has issued a `\tag` command, we have to use `\l_@@_tag_t1` and not `\theequation`. That's why we have to do the job done by `\refstepcounter` manually.

First, the incrementation of the counter (potentially).

```
1098             \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_tag_t1 { \int_gincr:N \c@equation }
```

We store in `\g_tmpa_t1` the tag we will have to compose at the end of the line. We use a global variable because we will use it in the *next* cell (after the `&`).

```
1099             \cs_gset:Npe \g_tmpa_t1
1100                 { \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_tag_t1 { \theequation } { \l_@@_tag_t1 } }
```

It's possible to put several labels for the same line (it's not possible in the environments of `amsmath`). That's why the different labels of a same line are stored in a sequence `\l_@@_labels_seq`.

```
1101             \seq_if_empty:NF \l_@@_labels_seq
1102                 {
```

Now, we do the job done by `\refstepcounter` and by the redefinitions of `\refstepcounter` done by some packages (the incrementation of the counter has been done yet).

First an action which is in the definition of `\refstepcounter`.

```
1103             \cs_set:Npe \currenlabel { \p@equation \g_tmpa_t1 }
```

Then, an action done by `hyperref` in its redefinition of `\refstepcounter`.

```
1104             \IfPackageLoadedT { hyperref }
1105                 { \hyper@refstepcounter { equation } }
```

Then, an action done by `cleveref` in its redefinition of `\refstepcounter`. The package `cleveref` creates in the `aux` file a command `\cref@currentlabel` similar to `\currenlabel` but with more informations.

```
1106             \IfPackageLoadedT { cleveref }
1107                 {
1108                     \cref@constructprefix { equation } \cref@result
1109                     \protected@edef \cref@currentlabel
1110                         {
1111                             [
1112                                 \cs_if_exist:NTF \cref@equation@alias
1113                                     \cref@equation@alias
1114                                     { equation }
1115                             ]
1116                             [ \arabic { equation } ] [ \cref@result ]
1117                             \p@equation \g_tmpa_t1
1118                         }
1119                 }
```

Now, we can issue the command `\label` (some packages may have redefined `\label`, for example `typedref`) for each item in the sequence of the labels (it's possible with `witharrows` to put several labels to the same line and that's why the labels are in the sequence `\l_@@_labels_seq`).

```
1120             \seq_map_function:NN \l_@@_labels_seq \currenlabel
1121         }
```

We save the booleans `\l_@@_tag_star_bool` and `\l_@@_qedhere_bool` because they will be used in the *next* cell (after the `&`). We recall that the cells of a `\halign` are TeX groups.

```
1122             \currenlabel \l_@@_tag_star_bool
1123             \currenlabel \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1124             \bool_if:NT \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool
1125                 {
```

```

1126     \openup - \jot
1127     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool
1128     \notag \\ &
1129   }
1130   &
1131   \@@_restore:N \l_@@_tag_star_bool
1132   \@@_restore:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1133   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1134     { \hbox_overlap_left:n \@@_qedhere_i: }
1135   \cs_set_eq:NN \theequation \g_tmpa_tl
1136   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_tag_star_bool
1137     { \cs_set_eq:NN \tagform@ \prg_do_nothing: }

```

We use `\@eqnnum` (we recall that there are two definitions of `\@eqnnum`, a standard definition and another, loaded if the class option `leqno` is used). However, of course, the position of the v-node is not the same whether the option `leqno` is used or not. That's here that we use the flag `\c_@@_leqno_bool`.

```

1138   \hbox_overlap_left:n
1139   {
1140     \bool_if:NF \c_@@_leqno_bool
1141     {
1142       \pgfpicture
1143       \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1144       \pgfcoordinate
1145         { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - v }
1146         \pgfpointorigin
1147       \endpgfpicture
1148     }
1149     \quad
1150     \@eqnnum
1151   }
1152   \bool_if:NT \c_@@_leqno_bool
1153   {
1154     \pgfpicture
1155     \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1156     \pgfcoordinate
1157       { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - v }
1158       \pgfpointorigin
1159     \endpgfpicture
1160   }
1161 }
1162 {
1163   \@@_save:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1164 </LaTeX>
1165   &
1166 <*LaTeX>
1167   \@@_restore:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1168   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1169     { \hbox_overlap_left:n \@@_qedhere_i: }
1170 </LaTeX>
1171   \pgfpicture
1172   \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1173   \pgfcoordinate
1174     { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - v }
1175     \pgfpointorigin
1176   \endpgfpicture
1177 <*LaTeX>
1178 }
1179 </LaTeX>
1180   }
1181   \dim_compare:nNnT { #1 } < { \c_zero_dim }
1182     { \@@_error:n { option~of~cr~negative } }
1183   \cr
1184   \noalign
1185   {

```

```

1186     \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \dim_max:nn { #1 } { \c_zero_dim } }
1187     \skip_vertical:N \l_tmpa_dim
1188     \skip_vertical:N \l_@@_interline_skip
1189     \scan_stop:
1190   }
1191 }
```

According to the documentation of L3, the previous addition in “`#1 + \l_@@_interline_skip`” is really an addition of skips (=glues).

The following command will be used when, after a `\\\` (and its optional arguments) there is a `\end`. You want to know if this is the end of the environment `{WithArrows}` (or `{DispWithArrows}`, etc.) because, in this case, we will explain that the environment must not be ended by `\\\`. If it is not the case, that means it's a classical situation of LaTeX environments not correctly imbricated and there will be a LaTeX error.

```

1192 <*LaTeX>
1193 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_analyze_end:Nn #1 #2
1194 {
1195   \str_if_eq:onT \l_@@_type_env_str { #2 }
1196   { \@@_err_newline_at_the_end: }
```

We reput in the stream the `\end{...}` we have extracted.

```

1197   \end { #2 }
1198 }
1199 </LaTeX>
```

12.9.6 The environment `{DispWithArrows}`

For the environment `{DispWithArrows}`, the general form of the construction is of the type:

`\[\vtop{\halign to \displaywidth {...}}\]`

The purpose of the `\vtop` is to have an environment unbreakable.

However, if we are juste after an item of a LaTeX list or at the beginning of a `{minipage}`, the construction is slightly different:

`\[\vtop{\halign to \linewidth {...}}\]`

The boolean `\l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool` will be raised if we are just after a `\item` of a list of LaTeX or at the beginning of a `{minipage}`.

```

1200 <*LaTeX>
1201 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool
1202 </LaTeX>
1203 <*LaTeX>
1204 \NewDocumentEnvironment { DispWithArrows } { ! d < > ! O { } }
1205 </LaTeX>
1206 <*plain-TeX>
1207 \cs_new_protected:Npn \DispWithArrows
1208 {
1209   \group_begin:
1210   \peek_meaning:NTF <
1211     { \DispWithArrows_i }
1212     { \DispWithArrows_i < \c_novalue_tl > }
1213   }
1214 \cs_new_protected:Npn \DispWithArrows_i < #1 >
1215 {
1216   \peek_meaning:NTF [
1217     { \DispWithArrows_ii < #1 > }
1218     { \DispWithArrows_ii < #1 > [ ] }
1219   }
1220 \cs_new_protected:Npn \DispWithArrows_ii < #1 > [ #2 ]
1221 </plain-TeX>
1222 {
1223   \tag_if_active:T { \@@_fatal:n { DispWithArrows-with~tagging } }
1224   \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
```

```

1225  {*plain-TeX}
1226    \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_type_env_str
1227    \str_set:Nn \l_@@_type_env_str { DispWithArrows }
1228 
```

Since the version 1.16 of `witharrows`, no space is added between an `\item` of a LaTeX list and an environment `{DispWithArrows}` except with the option `standard-behaviour-with-items` stored in the boolean `\l_@@_sbwi_bool`. We have to know if we are just after an `\item` and this information will be stored in `\l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool`. We have to do this test quickly after the beginning of the environment (in particular, because it must be done before the execution of the `code-before`³⁶).

```

1229  {*LaTeX}
1230    \bool_if:NF \l_@@_sbwi_bool
1231    {
1232      \legacy_if:nT { @inlabel }
1233      { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool }
1234      \legacy_if:nT { @minipage }
1235      { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool }
1236    }
1237 
```

If `mathtools` has been loaded with the option `showonlyrefs`, we disable the code of `mathtools` for the option `showonlyrefs` with the command `\MT_showonlyrefs_false:` (it will be reactivated at the end of the environment).

```

1238  {*LaTeX}
1239    \IfPackageLoadedT { mathtools }
1240    {
1241      \MH_if_boolean:nT { show_only_refs }
1242      {
1243        \MT_showonlyrefs_false:
1244      }
1245    }
1246 
```

However, we have to re-raise the flag `{show_only_refs}` of `mhsetup` because it has been switched off by `\MT_showonlyrefs_false:` and we will use it in the code of the new version of `\label`.

```

1244      \MH_set_boolean_T:n { show_only_refs }
1245    }
1246 } 
```

An action done by `typedref` in its redefinition of `\refstepcounter`. The command `\sr@name` is a prefix added to the name of the label by the redefinition of `\label` done by `typedref`.

```

1247  \IfPackageLoadedT { typedref }
1248    { \str_set:Nn \sr@name { equation } } 
```

The command `\intertext@` is a command of `amsmath` which loads the definition of `\intertext`.

```

1249  \IfPackageLoadedT { amsmath } { \intertext@ }
1250 
```

```

1251  \tl_if_no_value:oF { #1 }
1252  { \cs_set_nopar:Npn \l_@@_left_brace_tl { #1 } }
1253  \c_@_pre_halign:n { #2 } 
```

If `subequations` is used, we encapsulate the environment in an environment `{subequations}` of `amsmath`.

```

1254  {*LaTeX}
1255    \bool_if:NT \l_@@_subequations_bool { \begin{subequations} }
1256 
```

```

1257    \tl_if_eq:NNF \l_@@_left_brace_tl \c_no_value_tl
1258    { 
```

³⁶The `code-before` is not meant to contains typesetting material. However, it may contain, for example, a `{tikzpicture}` with options `overlay` and `remember picture` in order to draw nodes *under* some elements of the environment `{DispWithArrows}`.

We compute the value of the width of the left delimiter.

```
1259     \hbox_set:Nn \l_tmpa_box
1260     {
```

Even if the default value of `\nulldelimiterspace` is 1.2 pt, we take it into account.

```
1261     \group_begin:
1262     \dim_zero:N \nulldelimiterspace
1263     $ % $
1264     \left \l_@@_replace_left_brace_by_tl \vcenter to 1 cm { } \right.
1265     $ % $
1266     \group_end:
1267     }
1268     \dim_zero_new:N \l_@@_delim_wd_dim
1269     \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_delim_wd_dim { \box_wd:N \l_tmpa_box }
1270     \box_clear_new:N \l_@@_left_brace_box
1271     \hbox_set:Nn \l_@@_left_brace_box
1272     {
1273     \group_begin:
1274     \cs_set_eq:NN \label \l_@@_old_label
1275     $ % $
1276     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_displaystyle_bool { \displaystyle }
1277     \l_@@_left_brace_tl
1278     { }
1279     $ % $
1280     \group_end:
1281   }
1282 }
```

The token list `\l_@@_tag_tl` will contain the argument of the command `\tag`.

```
1283 <*LaTeX>
1284   \tl_clear_new:N \l_@@_tag_tl
1285   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
```

The boolean `\l_@@_tag_star_bool` will be raised if the user uses the command `\tag` with a star.

```
1286   \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tag_star_bool
1287 </LaTeX>
1288   \if_mode_math:
1289     \l_@@_fatal:n { DispWithArrows-in-math-mode }
1290   \fi:
```

The construction is not exactly the same whether we are just after an `\item` of a LaTeX list or not. We know if we are after an `\item` thanks to the boolean `\l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool`.

```
1291 <*plain-TeX>
1292   \dim_zero_new:N \linewidth
1293   \dim_set_eq:NN \linewidth \displaywidth
1294 </plain-TeX>
1295 <*LaTeX>
1296   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool
1297   {
1298     \noindent
1299     $ % $
1300   }
1301   {
1302 </LaTeX>
```

We don't use `\[` of LaTeX because some extensions, like `autonum`, do a redefinition of `\[`. However, we put the following lines which are in the definition of `\[` even though they are in case of misuse.

```
1303   \if_mode_vertical:
1304     \nointerlineskip
```

```

1305      \hbox_to_wd:nn { .6 \linewidth } { }
1306      \fi:
1307      $$ % $$
1308  <*LaTeX>
1309  }
1310 </LaTeX>
1311     \dim_zero_new:N \l_@@_linewidth_dim
1312 <*LaTeX>
1313     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool
1314     { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_linewidth_dim \linewidth }
1315     { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_linewidth_dim \displaywidth }
1316 </LaTeX>
1317 <*plain-TeX>
1318     \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_linewidth_dim \displaywidth
1319 </plain-TeX>
1320     \box_clear_new:N \l_@@_halign_box
1321     \setbox \l_@@_halign_box \vtop \bgroup
1322     \tabskip =
1323     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_fleqn_bool
1324     { \c_zero_skip }
1325     { 0 pt plus 1000 pt minus 1000 pt }

```

The command `\spread@equation` is the command used by `amsmath` in the beginning of an alignment to fix the interline. When used, it becomes no-op. However, it's possible to use `witharrows` without `amsmath` since we have redefined `\spread@equation` (if it is not defined yet).

```

1326 \spread@equation
1327 \@@_construct_halign:
1328 \tabskip = 0 pt plus 1000 pt minus 1000 pt
1329 &

```

If the user tries to use more columns than the length of the format, we have to raise an error. However, the error won't be in the next column which is the columns for the labels of the equations. The error will be after... and it must be after. That means that we must not have an error in the next column simply because we are not in math mode. That's why this column, even if it is for the labels, is in math mode.

```

1330 $ ## $
1331 \tabskip = \c_zero_skip
1332 &&
1333 \@@_fatal:n { Too-many-columns-in-DispWithArrows }
1334 \bool_if:nT { \c_false_bool } { ## }
1335 \cr
1336 }

```

We begin the second part of the environment `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1337 <*plain-TeX>
1338 \cs_new_protected:Npn \endDispWithArrows
1339 </plain-TeX>
1340 {
1341 <*LaTeX>
1342   \clist_if_in:NnT \l_@@_tags_clist { last }
1343   { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } }
1344 </LaTeX>
1345 \\

```

The following `\egroup` is for the `\halign`.

```

1346 \egroup
1347 \unskip \unpenalty \unskip \unpenalty
1348 \box_set_to:last:N \l_tmpa_box
1349 \nointerlineskip
1350 \box_use:N \l_tmpa_box
1351 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_alignment_dim

```

```

1352 \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_alignment_dim { \box_wd:N \l_tmpa_box }
1353 \box_clear_new:N \l_@@_new_box
1354 \hbox_set:Nn \l_@@_new_box { \hbox_unpack_drop:N \l_tmpa_box }
1355 \dim_compare:nNnT
1356   { \box_wd:N \l_@@_new_box } < { \g_@@_alignment_dim }
1357   { \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_alignment_dim { \box_wd:N \l_@@_new_box } }

```

The `\egroup` is for the box `\l_@@_halign_box`.

```

1358 \egroup
1359 \tl_if_eq:NNTF \l_@@_left_brace_tl \c_novalue_tl
1360   { \box_use_drop:N \l_@@_halign_box }
1361   {
1362     \hbox_to_wd:nn \l_@@_linewidth_dim
1363     {
1364       \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_fleqn_bool
1365         { \skip_horizontal:N \l_@@_mathindent_skip }
1366         { \hfil }
1367       \hbox_to_wd:nn \g_@@_alignment_dim
1368       {
1369         \box_use_drop:N \l_@@_left_brace_box
1370         \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim
1371           { \box_ht_plus_dp:N \l_@@_halign_box }
1372         \group_begin:
1373         \dim_zero:N \nulldelimiterspace
1374         $ % $
1375         \left \l_@@_replace_left_brace_by_tl
1376           \vcenter to \l_tmpa_dim { \vfil }
1377           \right.
1378         $ % $
1379         \group_end:
1380         \hfil
1381       }
1382       \hfil
1383     }
1384     \skip_horizontal:N -\l_@@_linewidth_dim
1385     \vcenter { \box_use_drop:N \l_@@_halign_box }
1386   }

```

We compute the dimension `\g_@@_right_x_dim`. As a first approximation, `\g_@@_right_x_dim` is the x -value of the right side of the current composition box. In fact, we must take into account the potential labels of the equations. That's why we compute `\g_@@_right_x_dim` with the v-nodes of each row specifically built in this goal. `\g_@@_right_x_dim` is the minimal value of the x -value of these nodes.

```

1387 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_right_x_dim
1388 \dim_gset_eq:NN \g_@@_right_x_dim \c_max_dim
1389 \pgfpicture
1390   \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1391   \int_step_variable:nNn { \g_@@_line_int } \l_tmpa_int
1392   {
1393     \cs_if_free:cTF
1394       { \pgf @ sh @ ns @ wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \l_tmpa_int - v }
1395       { \CQ_fatal:n { Inexistent~v-node } }
1396     {
1397       \pgfpointanchor
1398         { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \l_tmpa_int - v }
1399         { center }
1400       \dim_compare:nNnT { \pgf@x } < { \g_@@_right_x_dim }
1401       { \dim_gset_eq:NN \g_@@_right_x_dim \pgf@x }
1402     }
1403   }
1404 \endpgfpicture

```

The code in `\CQ_post_halign:` is common to `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1405     \@@_post_halign:
If mathtools has been loaded with the option showonlyrefs, we reactivate the code of mathtools for
the option showonlyrefs with the command \MT_showonlyrefs_true: (it has been deactivated in
the beginning of the environment).
1406 (*LaTeX)
1407   \IfPackageLoadedT { mathtools }
1408   { \MH_if_boolean:nT { show_only_refs } { \MT_showonlyrefs_true: } }
1409   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool
1410   {
1411     $ % $
1412     \skip_vertical:N \belowdisplayskip
1413   }
1414   { $$ } % $$

1415 
```

If the option `footnote` or the option `footnotehyper` is used, then we extract the footnotes with an
environment `{savenotes}` (of the package `footnote` or the package `footnotehyper`).

```

1421   \bool_if:NT \g_@@_footnote_bool { \end { savenotes } }
1422 
```

With the environment `{DispWithArrows*}`, the equations are not numbered. We don't put
`\begin{DispWithArrows}` and `\end{DispWithArrows}` because there is a `\@currenvir` in some error
messages.

```

1430 
```

12.10 The commands `\tag`, `\notag`, `\label`, `\tagnextline` and `\qedhere` for `{DispWithArrows}`

Some commands are allowed only in the last column of the environment `{DispWithArrows}`. We write a command `\@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn` to execute this command only if we are
in the last column. If we are in another column, an error is raised. The first argument of
`\@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn` is the name of the command used in the error message and the
second is the code to execute.

```

1438 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn #1 #2
1439 {
1440   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
1441   { \@@_error:nn { Not~allowed~in~WithArrows } { #1 } }
1442   {
1443     \int_compare:nNnTF { \g_@@_col_int } < { \l_@@_nb_cols_int }

```

```

1444     { \@@_error:nn { Not-allowed-in-DispWithArrows } { #1 } }
1445     { #2 }
1446   }
1447 }
```

The command `\@@_notag:` will be linked to the command `\notag` in the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1448 (*LaTeX)
1449 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_notag:
1450   { \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \notag { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist } }
```

The command `\@@_nonumber:` will be linked to the command `\nonumber` in the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1451 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_nonumber:
1452 {
1453   \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn
1454   \nonumber
1455   { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
1456 }
```

The command `\@@_tag` will be linked to `\tag` in `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`. We do the definition with `\NewDocumentCommand` because this command has a starred version.

```

1457 \NewDocumentCommand { \@@_tag } { s m }
1458 {
1459   \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \tag
1460   {
1461     \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_tag_tl
1462     { \@@_error:nn { Multiple-tags } { #2 } }
1463     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all }
1464     \IfPackageLoadedT { mathtools }
1465     {
1466       \MH_if_boolean:nT { show_only_refs }
1467       {
1468         \MH_if_boolean:nF { show_manual_tags }
1469         { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
1470       }
1471     }
1472     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_tag_tl { #2 }
1473     \bool_set:Nn \l_@@_tag_star_bool { #1 }
```

The starred version `\tag*` can't be used if `amsmath` has not been loaded because this version does the job by deactivating the command `\tagform@` inserted by `amsmath` in the (two versions of the) command `\@eqnnum`.³⁷

```

1474   \bool_if:nT { #1 }
1475   {
1476     \IfPackageLoadedF { amsmath }
1477     { \@@_error:n { tag*-without-amsmath } }
1478   }
1479 }
1480 }
```

The command `\@@_label:n` will be linked to `\label` in the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`. In these environments, it's possible to put several labels for the same line (it's not possible in the environments of `amsmath`). That's why we store the different labels of a same line in a sequence `\l_@@_labels_seq`.

```

1481 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_label:n #1
1482 {
1483   \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \label
```

³⁷There are two versions of `\@eqnnum`, a standard version and a version for the option `leqno`.

```

1484 {
1485   \seq_if_empty:NF \l_@@_labels_seq
1486   {
1487     \IfPackageLoadedTF { cleveref }
1488     { \@@_error:n { Multiple-labels-with-cleverref } }
1489     { \@@_error:n { Multiple-labels } }
1490   }
1491   \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_labels_seq { #1 }
1492   \IfPackageLoadedT { mathtools }
1493   {
1494     \MH_if_boolean:nT { show_only_refs }
1495     {
1496       \cs_if_exist:cTF { MT_r_#1 }
1497       { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } }
1498       { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
1499     }
1500   }
1501   \IfPackageLoadedT { autonum }
1502   {
1503     \cs_if_exist:cTF { autonum@#1Referenced }
1504     { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } }
1505     { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
1506   }
1507 }
1508 }
```

The command `\@@_tagnextline:` will be linked to `\tagnextline` in `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1509 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_tagnextline:
1510 {
1511   \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \tagnextline
1512   { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool }
1513 }
```

The environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` are compliant with the command `\qedhere` of `amsthm`. However, this compatibility requires a special version of `\qedhere`.

This special version is called `\@@_qedhere:` and will be linked with `\qedhere` in the last column of the environment `{DispWithArrows}` (only if the package `amsthm` has been loaded). `\@@_qedhere:` raises the boolean `\l_@@_qedhere_bool`.

```

1514 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_qedhere: { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool }
1515 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_set_qedhere: { \cs_set_eq:NN \qedhere \@@_qedhere: }
```

In the last column of the `\halign` of `{DispWithArrows}` (column of the labels, that is to say the numbers of the equations), a command `\@@_qedhere_i:` will be issued if the flag `\l_@@_qedhere_bool` has been raised. The code of this command is an adaptation of the code of `\qedhere` in `amsthm`.

```

1516 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_qedhere_i:
1517 {
1518   \group_begin:
1519   \cs_set_eq:NN \qed \qedsymbol
```

The line `\cs_set_eq:NN \qed@elt \setQED@elt` is a preparation for an action on the QED stack. Despite its form, the instruction `\QED@stack` executes an operation on the stack. This operation prints the QED symbol and nullify the top of the stack.

```

1520   \cs_set_eq:NN \qed@elt \setQED@elt
1521   \QED@stack \relax \relax
1522   \group_end:
1523 }
1524 
```

12.11 We draw the arrows

The arrows are divided in groups. There are two reasons for this division.

- If the option `group` or the option `groups` is used, all the arrows of a group are drawn on a same vertical at an abscissa of `\l_@@_x_dim`.
- For aesthetic reasons, the starting point of all the starting arrows of a group is raised upwards by the value `\l_@@_start_adjust_dim`. Idem for the ending arrows.

If the option `group` is used (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7`), we scan the arrows twice: in the first step we only compute the value of `\l_@@_x_dim` for the whole group, and, in the second step (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int` is set to 8), we divide the arrows in groups (for the vertical adjustement) and we actually draw the arrows.

```

1525 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_scan_arrows:
1526 {
1527     \group_begin:
1528     \int_compare:nNnT { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } = { 7 }
1529     {
1530         \@@_scan_arrows_i:
1531         \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int { 8 }
1532     }
1533     \@@_scan_arrows_i:
1534     \group_end:
1535 }

1536 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_scan_arrows_i:
1537 {

```

`\l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int` will be the first arrow of the current group.

`\l_@@_first_line_of_group_int` will be the first line involved in the group of arrows (equal to the initial line of the first arrow of the group because the option `jump` is always positive).

`\l_@@_first_arrows_seq` will be the list of the arrows of the group starting at the first line of the group (we may have several arrows starting from the same line). We have to know all these arrows because of the adjustement by `\l_@@_start_adjust_dim`.

`\l_@@_last_line_of_group_int` will be the last line involved in the group (impossible to guess in advance).

`\l_@@_last_arrows_seq` will be the list of all the arrows of the group ending at the last line of the group (impossible to guess in advance).

```

1538 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int
1539 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_first_line_of_group_int
1540 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int
1541 \seq_clear_new:N \l_@@_first_arrows_seq
1542 \seq_clear_new:N \l_@@_last_arrows_seq

```

The boolean `\l_@@_new_group_bool` is a switch that we will use to indicate that a group is finished (and the lines of that group have to be drawn). This boolean is not directly connected to the option `new-group` of an individual arrow.

```
1543 \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_new_group_bool
```

We begin a loop over all the arrows of the environment. Inside this loop, if a group is finished, we will draw the arrows of that group.

```

1544 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_arrow_int { 1 }
1545 \int_until_do:nNnn { \l_@@_arrow_int } > { \g_@@_arrow_int }
1546 {

```

We extract from the property list of the current arrow the fields “initial”, “final”, “status” and “input-line”. For the two former, we have to do conversions to integers.

```

1547     \prop_get:cnN
1548     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1549     { initial } \l_tmpa_tl
1550     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_initial_int { \l_tmpa_tl }
1551     \prop_get:cnN
1552     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1553     { final } \l_tmpa_tl
1554     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_final_int { \l_tmpa_tl }
1555     \prop_get:cnN
1556     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1557     { status } \l_@@_status_arrow_str
1558     \prop_get:cnN
1559     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1560     { input-line } \l_@@_input_line_str

```

We recall that, after the construction of the `\halign`, `\g_@@_line_int` is the total number of lines of the environment. Therefore, the conditionnal `\l_@@_final_int > \g_@@_line_int` tests whether an arrow arrives after the last line of the environment. In this case, we raise an error (except in the second step of treatment for the option group). The arrow will be completely ignored, even for the computation of `\l_@@_x_dim`.

```

1561     \int_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_final_int } > { \g_@@_line_int }
1562     {
1563         \int_compare:nNnF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = { 8 }
1564         { \@@_error:n { Too-few-lines-for-an-arrow } }
1565     }
1566     \@@_treat_an_arrow_in_scan:

```

Incrementation of the index of the loop (and end of the loop).

```

1567     \int_incr:N \l_@@_arrow_int
1568 }

```

After the last arrow of the environment, we have to draw the last group of arrows. If we are in option group and in the first step of treatment (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7`), we don’t draw because, in the first step, we don’t draw anything. If there is no arrow in the group, we don’t draw (this situation occurs when all the arrows of the potential group arrive after the last line of the environment).

```

1569     \bool_lazy_and:nnT
1570     { ! \int_compare_p:nNn { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } = { 7 } }
1571     {
1572         \int_compare_p:nNn
1573         { \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int } > { \c_zero_int }
1574     }
1575     {
1576         \@@_draw_arrows:nn
1577         { \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int }
1578         { \g_@@_arrow_int }
1579     }
1580 }

```

The following command is only for the lisibility of the code. It’s used only once. Its name may be misleading. Indeed, it treats an arrow in the scan but it *may* trigger the construction of all arrows of a group if it detects that a group has just been completed (with `\@@_draw_arrows:nn`)

```

1581 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_treat_an_arrow_in_scan:
1582 {

```

We test whether the previous arrow was in fact the last arrow of a group. In this case, we have to draw all the arrows of that group, except if we are with the option group and in the first step of treatment (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7`).

```

1583     \bool_lazy_and:nnT

```

```

1584 { \int_compare_p:nNn { \l_@@_arrow_int } > { 1 } }
1585 {
1586     \bool_lazy_or_p:nn
1587     {
1588         \bool_lazy_and_p:nn
1589         {
1590             \int_compare_p:nNn
1591             { \l_@@_initial_int } > { \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int }
1592         }
1593         {
1594             \bool_not_p:n
1595             { \int_compare_p:nNn { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } = { 7 } }
1596         }
1597     }
1598     { \str_if_eq_p:on \l_@@_status_arrow_str { new-group } }
1599 }
1600 {
1601     \int_if_zero:nF \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int
1602     {
1603         \@@_draw_arrows:nn
1604         { \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int }
1605         { \l_@@_arrow_int - 1 }
1606     }
1607     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_new_group_bool
1608 }

```

The flag `\l_@@_new_group_bool` indicates if we have to begin a new group of arrows. In fact, we have to begin a new group in three circonstances: if we are at the first arrow of the environment (that's why the flag is raised before the beginning of the loop), if we have just finished a group (that's why the flag is raised in the previous conditionnal, for topological reasons or if the previous arrows had the status "new-group"). At the beginning of a group, we have to initialize the following variables: `\l_@@_first_arrow_int`, `\l_@@_first_line_of_group_int`, `\l_@@_last_line_of_group`, `\l_@@_first_arrows_seq`, `\l_@@_last_arrows_seq`.

```

1609 \bool_if:nTF \l_@@_new_group_bool
1610 {
1611     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_new_group_bool
1612     \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int \l_@@_arrow_int
1613     \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_first_line_of_group_int \l_@@_initial_int
1614     \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int \l_@@_final_int
1615     \seq_clear:N \l_@@_first_arrows_seq
1616     \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_first_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int
1617     \seq_clear:N \l_@@_last_arrows_seq
1618     \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_last_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int

```

If we are in option group and in the second step of treatment (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 8`), we don't initialize `\l_@@_x_dim` because we want to use the same value of `\l_@@_x_dim` (computed during the first step) for all the groups.

```

1619     \int_compare:nNnF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } = { 8 }
1620     { \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_x_dim { - \c_max_dim } }
1621 }

```

If we are not at the beginning of a new group.

```

1622 {

```

If the arrow is independent, we don't take into account that arrow for the detection of the end of the group.

```

1623     \str_if_eq:onF \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent }
1624     {

```

If the arrow is not independent, the arrow belongs to the current group and we have to take it into account in some variables.

```

1625     \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_initial_int = \l_@@_first_line_of_group_int

```

```

1626     { \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_first_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int }
1627     \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_final_int > \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int
1628     {
1629         \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int \l_@@_final_int
1630         \seq_clear:N \l_@@_last_arrows_seq
1631         \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_last_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int
1632     }
1633     {
1634         \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_final_int = \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int
1635             { \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_last_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int }
1636     }
1637 }
1638 }
```

If the arrow is not independent, we update the current x -value (in $\l_@@_x_dim$) with the dedicated command \@@_update_x:nn . If we are in option group and in the second step of treatment ($\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 8$), we don't initialize $\l_@@_x_dim$ because we want to use the same value of $\l_@@_x_dim$ (computed during the first step) for all the groups.

```

1639     \str_if_eq:onF \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent }
1640     {
1641         \int_compare:nNnF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } = { 8 }
1642             { \@@_update_x:nn { \l_@@_initial_int } { \l_@@_final_int } }
1643     }
1644 }
```

The macro $\text{\@@_draw_arrows:nn}$ draws all the arrows whose numbers are between #1 and #2. #1 and #2 must be expressions that expands to an integer (they are expanded in the beginning of the macro). This macro is nullified by the option no-arrows.

```

1645 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_draw_arrows:nn #1 #2
1646 {
1647     \group_begin:
1648     \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_first_arrow_int
1649     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_first_arrow_int { #1 }
1650     \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_last_arrow_int
1651     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_last_arrow_int { #2 }
```

We begin a loop over the arrows we have to draw. The variable $\l_@@_arrow_int$ (local in the environment $\{WithArrows\}$) will be used as index for the loop.

```

1652     \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_arrow_int \l_@@_first_arrow_int
1653     \int_until_do:nNnm { \l_@@_arrow_int } > { \l_@@_last_arrow_int }
1654     {
```

We extract from the property list of the current arrow the fields “initial” and “final” and we store these values in $\l_@@_initial_int$ and $\l_@@_final_int$. However, we have to do a conversion because the components of a property list are token lists.

```

1655     \prop_get:cnN
1656         { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1657         { initial } \l_tmpa_tl
1658     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_initial_int \l_tmpa_tl
1659     \prop_get:cnN
1660         { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1661         { final } \l_tmpa_tl
1662     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_final_int \l_tmpa_tl
1663     \prop_get:cnN
1664         { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1665         { status } \l_@@_status_arrow_str
```

If the arrow ends after the last line of the environment, we don't draw the arrow (an error has already been raised in \@@_scan_arrows:). We recall that, after the construction of the \halign , \g_@@_line_int is the total number of lines of the environment).

```

1666     \int_compare:nNnF { \l_@@_final_int } > { \g_@@_line_int }
```

If the arrow is of type `over` (key `o`), we don't draw that arrow now (those arrows will be drawn after all the other arrows).

```

1667   {
1668     \str_if_eq:onTF \l_@@status_arrow_str { over }
1669       { \seq_put_right:NV \l_@@o_arrows_seq \l_@@arrow_int }
1670         \@@_draw_arrow:
1671   }
1672   \int_incr:N \l_@@arrow_int
1673 }
1674 \@@_draw_o_arrows_of_the_group:
1675 \group_end:
1676 }
```

The first `\group_begin:` is for the options of the arrows (but we remind that the options `ll`, `rr`, `rl`, `lr`, `i` and `jump` have already been extracted and are not present in the field `options` of the property list of the arrow).

```

1677 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_draw_arrow:
1678 {
1679   \group_begin:
```

We process the options of the current arrow.

```

1680 \prop_get:cN
1681   { g_@@_arrow _\l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1682   { options }
1683   \l_tmpa_tl
1684 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
```

We will expand the second argument of `\keys_set_known:nn` exactly three times. Maybe that an e-expansion would be possible but, in the past, there were problems with fragile commands such as `\bfseries` in the option `font` of the option `tikz` (it seems that this no longer the case).

```

1685 \exp_args:NNNno \exp_args:NNno \exp_args:Nno
1686 \keys_set_known:nn
1687   { WithArrows / Arrow / SecondPass }
1688   { \l_tmpa_tl , tikz = { xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim } }
```

We create two booleans to indicate the position of the initial node and final node of the arrow in cases of options `rr`, `rl`, `lr` or `ll`:

```

1689 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
1690 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
1691 \int_case:nn { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int }
1692   {
1693     0 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_final_r_bool }
1694     2 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool }
1695     3 {
1696       {
1697         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
1698         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
1699       }
1700     }
```

option	lr	ll	rl	rr	v	i	groups	group
<code>\l_@@_pos_arrow_int</code>	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

The option `v` can be used only in `\Arrow` in `code-after` (see below).

In case of option `i` at a local or global level (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 5`), we have to compute the *x*-value of the arrow (which is vertical). The computed *x*-value is stored in `\l_@@_x_dim` (the same variable used when the option `group` or the option `groups` is used).

```

1701 \int_compare:nNnT { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } = { 5 }
1702 {
```

```

1703     \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_x_dim { - \c_max_dim }
1704     \c@_update_x:nn { \l_@@_initial_int } { \l_@@_final_int }
1705 }

```

`\l_@@_initial_tl` contains the name of the Tikz node from which the arrow starts (in normal cases... because with the option `i`, `group` and `groups`, the point will perhaps have another *x*-value — but always the same *y*-value). Idem for `\l_@@_final_tl`.

```

1706 \tl_set:Ne \l_@@_initial_tl
1707 {
1708     \int_use:N \l_@@_initial_int -
1709     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_initial_r_bool { r } { l }
1710 }
1711 \tl_set:Ne \l_@@_final_tl
1712 {
1713     \int_use:N \l_@@_final_int -
1714     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_final_r_bool { r } { l }
1715 }

```

The label of the arrow will be stored in `\l_tmpa_tl`.

```

1716 \prop_get:cN
1717 { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1718 { label }
1719 \l_tmpa_tl

```

Now, we have to know if the arrow starts at the first line of the group and/or ends at the last line of the group. That's the reason why we have stored in `\l_@@_first_arrows_seq` the list of all the arrows starting at the first line of the group and in `\l_@@_last_arrows_seq` the list of all the arrows ending at the last line of the group. We compute these values in the booleans `\l_tmpa_bool` and `\l_tmpb_bool`. These computations can't be done in the following `{tikzpicture}` because of the command `\seq_if_in:NnTF` which is *not* expandable.

```

1720 \seq_if_in:NnTF \l_@@_first_arrows_seq
1721 { \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int }
1722 { \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpa_bool }
1723 { \bool_set_false:N \l_tmpa_bool }
1724 \seq_if_in:NnTF \l_@@_last_arrows_seq
1725 { \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int }
1726 { \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpb_bool }
1727 { \bool_set_false:N \l_tmpb_bool }
1728 \int_compare:nNnT { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } = { 5 }
1729 {
1730     \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpa_bool
1731     \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpb_bool
1732 }

```

We compute and store in `\g_tmpa_tl` and `\g_tmpb_tl` the exact coordinates of the extremities of the arrow.

- Concerning the *x*-values, the abscissa computed in `\l_@@_x_dim` will be used if the option of position is `i`, `group` or `groups`.
- Concerning the *y*-values, an adjustment is done for each arrow starting at the first line of the group and each arrow ending at the last line of the group (with the values of `\l_@@_start_adjust_dim` and `\l_@@_end_adjust_dim`).

```

1733 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_x_initial_dim
1734 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_x_final_dim
1735 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_y_initial_dim
1736 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_y_final_dim
1737 \pgfpicture
1738     \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1739     \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \l_@@_initial_tl } { south }

```

```

1740 \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_x_initial_dim \pgf@x
1741 \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_y_initial_dim \pgf@y
1742 \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \l_@@_final_tl } { north }
1743 \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_x_final_dim \pgf@x
1744 \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_y_final_dim \pgf@y
1745 \endpgfpicture
1746 \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
1747 {
1748     \dim_compare_p:nNn { \g_@@_y_initial_dim - \g_@@_y_final_dim }
1749             > \l_@@_max_length_of_arrow_dim
1750 }
1751 { \int_compare_p:nNn { \l_@@_final_int - \l_@@_initial_int } = { 1 } }
1752 {
1753     \tl_gset:Ne \g_tmpa_tl
1754     {
1755         \int_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } < { 5 }
1756         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_x_initial_dim }
1757         { \dim_use:N \l_@@_x_dim } ,
1758         \dim_eval:n
1759         {
1760             ( \g_@@_y_initial_dim + \g_@@_y_final_dim ) / 2
1761             + 0.5 \l_@@_max_length_of_arrow_dim
1762         }
1763     }
1764     \tl_gset:Ne \g_tmpb_tl
1765     {
1766         \int_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } < { 5 }
1767         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_x_final_dim }
1768         { \dim_use:N \l_@@_x_dim } ,
1769         \dim_eval:n
1770         {
1771             ( \g_@@_y_initial_dim + \g_@@_y_final_dim ) / 2
1772             - 0.5 \l_@@_max_length_of_arrow_dim
1773         }
1774     }
1775 }
1776 {
1777     \tl_gset:Ne \g_tmpa_tl
1778     {
1779         \int_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } < { 5 }
1780         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_x_initial_dim }
1781         { \dim_use:N \l_@@_x_dim } ,
1782         \bool_if:NTF \l_tmpa_bool
1783         { \dim_eval:n { \g_@@_y_initial_dim + \l_@@_start_adjust_dim } }
1784         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_y_initial_dim }
1785     }
1786     \tl_gset:Ne \g_tmpb_tl
1787     {
1788         \int_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } < { 5 }
1789         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_x_final_dim }
1790         { \dim_use:N \l_@@_x_dim } ,
1791         \bool_if:NTF \l_tmpb_bool
1792         { \dim_eval:n { \g_@@_y_final_dim - \l_@@_end_adjust_dim } }
1793         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_y_final_dim }
1794     }
1795 }

```

The dimension $\l_@@_delta_x_dim$ is the difference of abscissa between the right side of the alignment (\halign) and the left side of the arrow.

```

1796 \bool_if:NF \l_@@_right_overlap_bool
1797 {
1798     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
1799     {
1800         \pgfpicture

```

```

1801     \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1802     \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - 1 - r } { south }
1803     \int_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } < { 5 }
1804     {
1805         \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_delta_x_dim
1806         {
1807             \pgf@x -
1808             ( \dim_min:nn { \g_@@_x_initial_dim } { \g_@@_x_final_dim } )
1809         }
1810         \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_delta_x_dim { \pgf@x - \l_@@_x_dim }
1811     \endpgfpicture
1812 }
1813 }
1814 }
```

Eventually, we can draw the arrow with the code in `\l_@@_tikz_code_t1`. We recall that the value by default for this token list is : “`\draw (#1) to node {#3} (#2)` ;”. This value can be modified with the option `tikz-code`. We use the variant `\@@_draw_arrow:nno` of the macro `\@@_draw_arrow:nnn` because of the characters *underscore* in the name `\l_tmpa_t1`: if the user uses the Tikz library `babel`, the third argument of the command `\@@_draw_arrow:nno` will be rescanned because this third argument will be in the argument of a command `node` of an instruction `\draw` of Tikz... and we will have an error because of the characters *underscore*.³⁸

```
1815     \@@_draw_arrow:nno \g_tmpa_t1 \g_tmpb_t1 \l_tmpa_t1
```

We close the TeX group opened for the options given to `\Arrow[...]` (local level of the options).

```

1816     \group_end:
1817 }
```

The function `\@@_tmpa:nnn` will draw the arrow. It’s merely an environment `{tikzpicture}`. However, the Tikz instruction in this environment must be inserted from `\l_@@_tikz_code_t1` with the markers `#1`, `#2` and `#3`. That’s why we create a function `\@@_def_function_arrow:n` which will create the function `\@@_arrow:nnn`.

```

1818 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_def_function_arrow:n #1
1819 {
1820     \cs_set:Npn \@@_arrow:nnn ##1 ##2 ##3
1821     {
1822         (*LaTeX)
1823         \begin{tikzpicture}
1824     (/LaTeX)
1825     (*plain-TeX)
1826         \tikzpicture
1827     (/plain-TeX)
1828         [ @@_standard_arrow ]
```

You keep track of the bounding box because we want to compute the total width of the arrow (with the label) for the arrows of type `over` and also for the actualization of `\g_@@_overlap_x_dim`.

```

1829     \pgf@relevantforpicturesizetrue
1830     #1
1831     \dim_compare:nNnTF { \pgf@picminx } = { 16000 pt }
1832     { \dim_zero:N \l_tmpa_dim }
1833     { \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \pgf@picmaxx - \pgf@picminx } }
1834     \dim_add:Nn \l_tmpa_dim \l_@@_xoffset_dim
\l_@@_arrow_int = 0 probably means that we have an arrow in the code-after.
1835     \int_compare:nNnT { \l_@@_arrow_int } > { 0 } % added 2024/10/01
1836     {
1837         \prop_gput:cnV
1838         { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
```

³⁸There were other solutions: use another name without *underscore* (like `\l_tmpat1`) or use the package `underscore` (with this package, the characters *underscore* will be rescanned without errors, even in text mode).

```

1839         { width }
1840         \l_tmpa_dim
1841     }

```

Now, the actualization of `\g_@@_overlap_x_dim`.

```

1842     \bool_if:NF \l_@@_right_overlap_bool
1843     {
1844         \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
1845         {
1846             \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_overlap_x_dim
1847             {
1848                 \dim_max:nn
1849                 \g_@@_overlap_x_dim
1850                 { \l_tmpa_dim - \l_@@_delta_x_dim }
1851             }
1852         }
1853     }
1854     \pgfresetboundingbox
1855 <*LaTeX>
1856     \end{tikzpicture}
1857 </LaTeX>
1858 <*plain-TeX>
1859     \endtikzpicture
1860 </plain-TeX>
1861     }
1862 }
1863 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_def_function_arrow:n { o }

```

When we draw the arrow (with `\@@_draw_arrow:nnn`), we first create the function `\@@_arrow:nnn` and, then, we use the function `\@@_arrow:nnn`:

```

1864 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_draw_arrow:nnn #1 #2 #3
1865 {

```

If the option `wrap-lines` is used, we have to use a special version of `\l_@@_tikz_code_tl` (which corresponds to the option `tikz-code`).

```

1866 \bool_lazy_and:nnT \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool \l_@@_in_DispWithArrows_bool
1867 { \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_tikz_code_tl \c_@@_tikz_code_wrap_lines_tl }

```

Now, the main lines of this function `\@@_draw_arrow:nnn`.

```

1868 \@@_def_function_arrow:o \l_@@_tikz_code_tl
1869 \@@_arrow:nnn { #1 } { #2 } { #3 }
1870 }
1871 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_draw_arrow:nnn { n n o }

```

If the option `wrap-lines` is used, we have to use a special version of `\l_@@_tikz_code_tl` (which corresponds to the option `tikz-code`).

```

1872 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_wrap_lines_tl
1873 {
1874     \pgfset { inner-sep = \c_zero_dim }

```

First, we draw the arrow without the label.

```

1875     \draw ( #1 ) to node ( @@_label ) { } ( #2 ) ;

```

We retrieve in `\pgf@x` the abscissa of the left-side of the label we will put.

```

1876     \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - @@_label } { west }

```

We compute in `\l_tmpa_dim` the maximal width possible for the label. Here is the use of `\g_@@_right_x_dim` which has been computed previously with the v-nodes.

```

1877     \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \g_@@_right_x_dim - \pgf@x - 0.33333 em }

```

We retrieve in `\g_tmpa_tl` the current value of the Tikz parameter “text width”.³⁹

```
1878 \path \pgfextra { \tl_gset:N \g_tmpa_tl \tikz@text@width } ;
```

Maybe the current value of the parameter “text width” is shorter than `\l_tmpa_dim`. In this case, we must use “text width” (we update `\l_tmpa_dim`).

```
1879 \tl_if_empty:NF \g_tmpa_tl
1880 {
1881     \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpb_dim \g_tmpa_tl
1882     \dim_compare:nNnT { \l_tmpb_dim } < { \l_tmpa_dim }
1883         { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpa_dim \l_tmpb_dim }
1884 }
```

Now, we can put the label with the right value for “text width”.

```
1885 \dim_compare:nNnT { \l_tmpa_dim } > { \c_zero_dim }
1886 {
1887     \path ( @_label.west )
1888     (*LaTeX)
1889         node [ anchor = west ]
1890     {
1891         \skip_horizontal:n { 0.33333 em }
1892         \begin{minipage} { \l_tmpa_dim }
1893             \tikz@text@action
1894             \pgfkeysgetvalue{/ tikz / node-halign-header} \l_tmpa_tl
1895             \tl_if_eq:NnTF \l_tmpa_tl { \tikz@align@left@header }
1896                 { \pgfutil@raggedright }
1897                 {
1898                     \tl_if_eq:NnTF \l_tmpa_tl { \tikz@align@right@header }
1899                         { \pgfutil@raggedleft }
1900                         {
1901                             \tl_if_eq:NnT \l_tmpa_tl { \tikz@align@center@header }
1902                                 { \centering }
1903                         }
1904                     }
1905                     #3
1906                     \end{minipage}
1907     } ;
1908 
```

```
1909 (*plain-TeX)
```

```
1910     node [ anchor = west , text-width = \dim_use:N \l_tmpa_dim ]
1911     { \skip_horizontal:n { 0.33333 em } #3 } ;
1912 
```

```
1913 }
```

```
1914 }
```

12.11.1 The command `update_x`

The command `\@@_update_x:nn` will analyze the lines between #1 and #2 in order to modify `\l_@@_x_dim` in consequence. More precisely, `\l_@@_x_dim` is increased if a line longer than the current value of `\l_@@_x_dim` is found. `\@@_update_x:nn` is used in `\@@_scan_arrows:` (for options `group` and `groups`) and in `\@@_draw_arrows:nn` (for option `i`).

```
1915 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_update_x:nn #1 #2
1916 {
1917     \dim_gset_eq:NN \g_tmpa_dim \l_@@_x_dim
1918     \pgfpicture
1919     \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1920     \int_step_inline:nnn { #1 } { #2 }
1921         {
1922             \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - ##1 - 1 } { center }
```

³⁹In fact, it's not the current value of “text width”: it's the value of “text width” set in the option `tikz` provided by `witharrows`. These options are given to Tikz in a “every path”. That's why we have to retrieve it in a path.

```

1923     \dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim { \dim_max:nn { \g_tmpa_dim } { \pgf@x } }
1924   }
1925 \endpgfpicture
1926 \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_x_dim \g_tmpa_dim
1927 }

```

12.11.2 We draw the arrows of type o

We recall that the arrows of type o will be drawn *over* (hence the letter o) the other arrows. The arrows of type o are available only when the option `group` or the option `groups` is in force. The arrows of type o will be drawn group by group. The command `\@@_draw_o_arrows_of_the_group:` is called after the construction of the (other) arrows of the group.

```

1928 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_draw_o_arrows_of_the_group:
1929   {
1930     \bool_lazy_all:nTF
1931       {
1932         \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool
1933         \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
1934         { ! \seq_if_empty_p:N \l_@@_o_arrows_seq }
1935       }
1936     { \@@_error:n { o-arrow-with-wrap-lines } }
1937     { \@@_draw_o_arrows_of_the_group_i: }
1938   }
1939 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_draw_o_arrows_of_the_group_i:
1940   {

```

The numbers of the arrows of type o we have to draw are in the sequence `\l_@@_o_arrows_seq`. We have to sort that sequence because the order in which these arrows will be drawn matters.

- The arrows which arrive first must be drawn first.
- For arrows with the same final line, the arrows with lower initial line must be drawn after (because they encompass the previous ones).

The second point ensures the expected output in situations such as in the following example:

```

$\begin{aligned}
\begin{WithArrows}[groups]
A &= B \Arrow{o,jump=3}{one} \\
&= C \Arrow{o,jump=2}{two} \\
&= D \Arrow{three} \\
&= E + E
\end{WithArrows}
&\qquad A = B \\
&\qquad = C \\
&\qquad = D \\
&\qquad = E + E \quad \begin{array}{c} \nearrow three \\ \searrow two \\ \swarrow one \end{array}
\end{aligned}$

```

```

1941 \seq_sort:Nn \l_@@_o_arrows_seq
1942   {
1943     \prop_get:cnN
1944       { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##1 _ prop }
1945       { final } \l_tmpa_tl

```

We recall that `\prop_get:cnN` retrieves token lists (here `\l_tmpa_tl` and `\l_tmpb_tl`). We don't need to do an explicit conversion in L3 integers because such token lists can be used directly in `\int_compare:nNnTF`.

```

1946 \prop_get:cnN
1947   { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##2 _ prop }
1948   { final } \l_tmpb_tl
1949 \int_compare:nNnTF { \l_tmpa_tl } < { \l_tmpb_tl }
1950   \sort_return_same:
1951   {
1952     \int_compare:nNnTF { \l_tmpa_tl } > { \l_tmpb_tl }
1953     \sort_return_swapped:
1954   }

```

```

1955     \prop_get:cnN
1956     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##1 _ prop }
1957     { initial } \l_tmpa_tl
1958 \prop_get:cnN
1959     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##2 _ prop }
1960     { initial } \l_tmpb_tl
1961 \int_compare:nNnTF { \l_tmpa_tl } < { \l_tmpb_tl }
1962     \sort_return_swapped:
1963     \sort_return_same:
1964   }
1965 }
1966 }
```

Now, we can draw the arrows of type o of the group in the order of the sequence.

```

1967 \seq_map_inline:Nn \l_@@_o_arrows_seq
1968 {
```

We retrieve the initial row and the final row of the arrow.

```

1969 \prop_get:cnN
1970     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##1 _ prop }
1971     { initial } \l_tmpa_tl
1972 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_initial_int \l_tmpa_tl
1973 \prop_get:cnN
1974     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##1 _ prop }
1975     { final } \l_tmpa_tl
1976 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_final_int \l_tmpa_tl
```

The string \l_@@_input_line_str will be used only in some error messages.

```

1977 \prop_get:cnN
1978     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ ##1 _ prop }
1979     { input-line } \l_@@_input_line_str
```

We have to compute the maximal width of all the arrows (with their labels) which are covered by our arrow. We will compute that dimension in \g_tmpa_dim. We need a global dimension because we will have to exit a \pgfpicture.

```
1980 \dim_gzero:N \g_tmpa_dim
```

We will raise the boolean \g_tmpa_bool if we find an arrow “under” our arrow (we should find at least once since you are drawing an arrow of type o: if not, we will raise an error⁴⁰).

```

1981 \bool_set_false:N \g_tmpa_bool
1982 \pgfpicture
1983 \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
1984 \int_step_inline:nnn \l_@@_first_arrow_int \l_@@_last_arrow_int
1985 {
1986     \prop_get:cnN
1987     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ #####1 _ prop }
1988     { initial } \l_tmpa_tl
1989 \prop_get:cnN
1990     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ #####1 _ prop }
1991     { final } \l_tmpb_tl
1992 \prop_get:cnN
1993     { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ #####1 _ prop }
1994     { status } \l_@@_status_arrow_str
1995 \bool_lazy_any:nF
1996 {
1997     { \int_compare_p:n { #####1 = #####1 } }
1998     { \int_compare_p:nNn { \l_@@_initial_int } > { \l_tmpa_tl } }
1999     { \int_compare_p:nNn { \l_tmpb_tl } > { \l_@@_final_int } }
```

We don't take into account the independent arrows because we have only computed the *width* of the arrows and that's why our arrow of type o will be positionned only relatively to the current group.

⁴⁰Maybe we will change that in future versions.

```

2000     { \str_if_eq_p:on \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent } }
2001   }
2002   {

```

The total width of the arrow (with its label) has been stored in a “field” of the arrow.

```

2003   \bool_gset_true:N \g_tmpa_bool
2004   \prop_get:cN
2005     { g_@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ #####1 _ prop }
2006     { width }
2007     \l_tmpa_tl

```

We have to do a global affectation in order to exit the pgfpicture.

```

2008   \dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim { \dim_max:nn \g_tmpa_dim \l_tmpa_tl }
2009   }
2010   }
2011 \endpgfpicture

```

The boolean `\g_tmpa_bool` is raised if at least one arrow has been found “under” our arrow (it should be the case since we are drawing an arrow of type o).

```

2012   \bool_if:NTF \g_tmpa_bool
2013   {
2014     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_arrow_int { ##1 }
2015     \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_xoffset_dim \g_tmpa_dim
2016     \dim_add:Nn \l_@@_xoffset_dim { \l_@@_xoffset_for_o_arrows_dim }
2017     \o_draw_arrow:
2018   }
2019   { \@@_error:n { o-arrow-with-no-arrow-under } }
2020   }
2021 }

```

The command `\WithArrowsLastEnv` is not used by the package `witharrows`. It’s only a facility given to the final user. It gives the number of the last environment `{WithArrows}` at level 0 (to the sense of the nested environments). This macro is fully expandable and, thus, can be used directly in the name of a Tikz node.

```

2022 (*LaTeX)
2023 \NewExpandableDocumentCommand \WithArrowsLastEnv { }
2024   { \int_use:N \g_@@_last_env_int }
2025 (/LaTeX)
2026 (*plain-TeX)
2027 \cs_new:Npn \WithArrowsLastEnv { \int_use:N \g_@@_last_env_int }
2028 (/plain-TeX)

```

12.12 The command `\Arrow` in code-after

The option `code-after` is an option of the environment `{WithArrows}` (this option is only available at the environment level). In the option `code-after`, one can use the command `Arrow` but it’s a special version of the command `Arrow`. For this special version (internally called `\@@_Arrow_code_after`), we define a special set of keys called `WithArrows/Arrow/code-after`.

```

2029 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / code-after }
2030   {
2031     tikz .code:n =
2032       \tikzset { WithArrows / arrow / .append-style = { #1 } } ,
2033     tikz .value_required:n = true ,
2034     rr .value_forbidden:n = true ,
2035     rr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 0 ,
2036     ll .value_forbidden:n = true ,
2037     ll .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 1 ,
2038     rl .value_forbidden:n = true ,
2039     rl .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 2 ,
2040     lr .value_forbidden:n = true ,
2041     lr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 3 ,

```

```

2042     v           .value_forbidden:n = true ,
2043     v           .code:n          = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 4 ,
2044     tikz-code .tl_set:N       = \l_@@_tikz_code_tl ,
2045     tikz-code .value_required:n = true ,
2046     xoffset   .dim_set:N       = \l_@@_xoffset_dim ,
2047     xoffset   .value_required:n = true ,
2048     unknown   .code:n =
2049         \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_Arrow_code_after_seq
2050     \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~Arrow~in~code~after }
2051 }

```

A sequence of the options available in \Arrow in code-after. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

2052 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_Arrow_code_after_seq
2053 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_code_after_seq
2054 { ll, lr, rl, rr, tikz, tikz-code, v, x, offset }

```

```

2055 (*LaTeX)
2056 \NewDocumentCommand \@@_Arrow_code_after { 0 { } m m m ! 0 { } }
2057 (/LaTeX)
2058 (*plain-TeX)
2059 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_code_after
2060 {
2061     \peek_meaning:NTF [
2062         { \@@_Arrow_code_after_i }
2063         { \@@_Arrow_code_after_i [ ] }
2064     ]
2065     \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_code_after_i [ #1 ] #2 #3 #4
2066     {
2067         \peek_meaning:NTF [
2068             { \@@_Arrow_code_after_ii [ #1 ] { #2 } { #3 } { #4 } }
2069             { \@@_Arrow_code_after_ii [ #1 ] { #2 } { #3 } { #4 } [ ] }
2070         ]
2071     \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_code_after_ii [ #1 ] #2 #3 #4 [ #5 ]
2072     
```

```

2073     {
2074         \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_pos_arrow_int \c_one_int
2075         \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
2076         \group_begin:
2077             \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / code-after }
2078                 { #1, #5, tikz = { xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim } }
2079             \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
2080             \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
2081             \int_case:nn { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int }
2082                 {
2083                     0
2084                     {
2085                         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
2086                         \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
2087                     }
2088                     2 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool }
2089                     3 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_final_r_bool }
2090                 }

```

We prevent drawing an arrow from a line to itself.

```

2091 \tl_if_eq:nnTF { #2 } { #3 }
2092     { \@@_error:nn { Both~lines~are~equal } { #2 } }

```

We test whether the two Tikz nodes (#2-1) and (#3-1) really exist. If not, the arrow won't be drawn.

```

2093 {
2094     \cs_if_free:cTF { pgf@sh@ns@wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - #2 - 1 }

```

```

2095 { \@@_error:ne { Wrong~line~in~Arrow } { #2 } }
2096 {
2097     \cs_if_free:cTF { pgf@sh@ns@wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - #3 - 1 }
2098     { \@@_error:ne { Wrong~line~in~Arrow } { #3 } }
2099     {
2100         \int_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } = { 4 }
2101         {
2102             \pgfpicture
2103                 \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
2104                 \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - #2 - 1 }
2105                     { south }
2106                     \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpa_dim \pgf@x
2107                     \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpb_dim \pgf@y
2108                     \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - #3 - 1 }
2109                         { north }
2110                     \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim
2111                         { \dim_max:nn \l_tmpa_dim \pgf@x }
2112                     \tl_gset:Ne \g_tmpa_tl
2113                         { \dim_use:N \l_tmpa_dim , \dim_use:N \l_tmpb_dim }
2114                     \tl_gset:Ne \g_tmpb_tl
2115                         { \dim_use:N \l_tmpa_dim , \dim_use:N \pgf@y }
2116             \endpgfpicture
2117         }
2118     {
2119         \pgfpicture
2120             \pgfrememberpicturepositiononpagetrue
2121             \pgfpointanchor
2122                 {
2123                     wa - \l_@@_prefix_str -
2124                     #2 - \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_initial_r_bool { r } { l }
2125                 }
2126                 { south }
2127                 \tl_gset:Ne \g_tmpa_tl
2128                     { \dim_use:N \pgf@x , \dim_use:N \pgf@y }
2129                 \pgfpointanchor
2130                     {
2131                         wa - \l_@@_prefix_str -
2132                         #3 - \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_final_r_bool { r } { l }
2133                     }
2134                     { north }
2135                     \tl_gset:Ne \g_tmpb_tl
2136                         { \dim_use:N \pgf@x , \dim_use:N \pgf@y }
2137             \endpgfpicture
2138         }
2139         \@@_draw_arrow:nnn \g_tmpa_tl \g_tmpb_tl { #4 }
2140     }
2141 }
2142 }
2143 \group_end:
2144 }
```

12.13 The command \MultiArrow in code-after

The command \@@_MultiArrow:nn will be linked to \MultiArrow when the code-after is executed.

```

2145 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_MultiArrow:nn #1 #2
2146 {
```

The user of the command \MultiArrow (in code-after) will be able to specify the list of lines with the same syntax as the loop \foreach of pgffor. First, we test with a regular expression whether the format of the list of lines is correct.

```

2147 \exp_args:Nne
2148 \regex_if_match:nnTF
```

```

2149 { \A \d+ (\,,\d+)* ( \, \.\.\. (\,,\d+)+ )* \Z }
2150 { #1 }
2151 { \@@_MultiArrow_i:nn { #1 } { #2 } }
2152 { \@@_error:ne { Invalid-specification-for-MultiArrow } { #1 } }
2153 }
2154 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_MultiArrow_i:nn #1 #2
2155 {

```

That's why we construct a “clist” of L3 from the specification of list given by the user. The construction of the “clist” must be global in order to exit the `\foreach` and that's why we will construct the list in `\g_tmpa_clist`.

```

2156 \foreach \x in { #1 }
2157 {
2158     \cs_if_free:cTF { pgf@sh@ns@wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \x - 1 }
2159     { \@@_error:ne { Wrong-line-specification-in-MultiArrow } \x }
2160     { \clist_gput_right:Ne \g_tmpa_clist \x }
2161 }

```

We sort the list `\g_tmpa_clist` because we want to extract the minimum and the maximum.

```

2162 \int_compare:nNnTF { \clist_count:N \g_tmpa_clist } < { 2 }
2163 { \@@_error:n { Too-small-specification-for-MultiArrow } }
2164 {
2165     \clist_sort:Nn \g_tmpa_clist
2166     {
2167         \int_compare:nNnTF { ##1 } > { ##2 }
2168         \sort_return_swapped:
2169         \sort_return_same:
2170     }

```

We extract the minimum in `\l_tmpa_tl` (it must be an integer but we store it in a token list of L3).

```

2171 \clist_pop:NN \g_tmpa_clist \l_tmpa_tl

```

We extract the maximum in `\l_tmpb_tl`. The remaining list (in `\g_tmpa_clist`) will be sorted in decreasing order but never mind...

```

2172 \clist_reverse:N \g_tmpa_clist
2173 \clist_pop:NN \g_tmpa_clist \l_tmpb_tl

```

We draw the teeth of the rak (except the first one and the last one) with the auxiliary function `\@@_MultiArrow_i:n`. This auxiliary fonction is necessary to expand the specification of the list in the `\foreach` loop. The first and the last teeth of the rak can't be drawn the same way as the others (think, for example, to the case of the option “rounded corners” is used).

```

2174 \exp_args:No \@@_MultiArrow_i:n \g_tmpa_clist

```

Now, we draw the rest of the structure.

```

2175 <*LaTeX>
2176     \begin{tikzpicture}
2177 </LaTeX>
2178 <*plain-TeX>
2179     \tikzpicture
2180 </plain-TeX>
2181     [
2182         @@_standard ,
2183         every~path / .style = { WithArrows / arrow }
2184     ]
2185     \draw [←→] ([xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim]\l_tmpa_tl-r.south)
2186     -- +(5mm,0)
2187     -- node (@@_label) {}
2188     ([xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim+5mm]\l_tmpb_tl-r.south)
2189     -- ([xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim]\l_tmpb_tl-r.south) ;
2190     \pgfpointanchor { wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - @@_label } { west }
2191     \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { 20 cm }
2192     \path \pgfextra { \tl_gset:Ne \g_tmpa_tl \tikz@text@width } ;
2193     \tl_if_empty:NF \g_tmpa_tl { \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \g_tmpa_tl } }
2194     \bool_lazy_and:nnt \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
2195     {

```

```

2196          \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpb_dim
2197              { \g_@@_right_x_dim - \pgf@x - 0.3333 em }
2198          \dim_compare:nNnT { \l_tmpb_dim } < { \l_tmpa_dim }
2199              { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpa_dim \l_tmpb_dim }
2200      }
2201      \path (@@_label.west)
2202          node [ anchor = west, text~width = \dim_use:N \l_tmpa_dim ] { #2 } ;
2203  {*LaTeX}
2204      \end{tikzpicture}
2205 /{LaTeX}
2206 (*plain-TeX)
2207     \endtikzpicture
2208 /{plain-TeX}
2209     }
2210 }
2211 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_MultiArrow_i:n #1
2212 {
2213 (*LaTeX)
2214     \begin{tikzpicture}
2215 /{LaTeX}
2216 (*plain-TeX)
2217     \tikzpicture
2218 /{plain-TeX}
2219     [
2220         @@_standard ,
2221         every-path / .style = { WithArrows / arrow }
2222     ]
2223     \foreach \k in { #1 }
2224     {
2225         \draw [ <- ]
2226             ( [xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim]\k-r.south ) -- ++(5mm,0) ;
2227     }
2228 (*LaTeX)
2229     \end{tikzpicture}
2230 /{LaTeX}
2231 (*plain-TeX)
2232     \endtikzpicture
2233 /{plain-TeX}
2234 }
```

12.14 The command \WithArrowsNewStyle

A new key defined with \WithArrowsNewStyle will not be available at the local level.

```

2235 (*LaTeX)
2236 \NewDocumentCommand \WithArrowsNewStyle { m m }
2237 /{LaTeX}
2238 (*plain-TeX)
2239 \cs_new_protected:Npn \WithArrowsNewStyle #1 #2
2240 /{plain-TeX}
2241 {
2242     \keys_if_exist:nnTF { WithArrows / Global } { #1 }
2243         { \@@_error:nn { Key-already-defined } { #1 } }
2244 }
```

First, we detect whether there is unknown keys in #2 by storing in \l_tmpa_seq the list of the unknown keys.

```

2245     \seq_clear:N \l_tmpa_seq
2246     \keyval_parse:NNn \@@_valid_key:n \@@_valid_key:nn { #2 }
2247     \seq_if_empty:NTF \l_tmpa_seq
2248     {
2249         \seq_put_right:Ne \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq
2250             { \tl_to_str:n { #1 } }
2251         \seq_put_right:Ne \l_@@_options_DisWithArrows_seq
```

```

2252     { \tl_to_str:n { #1 } }
2253     \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq
2254     { \tl_to_str:N { #1 } }
2255     \keys_precompile:nnc
2256     { WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions }
2257     { #2 }
2258     { @@ _ style _ #1 _ tl }
2259     \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Global }
2260     { #1 .code:n = \use:c { @@ _ style _ #1 _ tl } }
2261   }
2262   { \@@_error:nn { Impossible~style } { #1 } }
2263 }
2264
2265 \@@_msg_new:nn { Impossible~style }
2266 {
2267   Impossible-style.\\
2268   It's-impossible-to-define-the-style-'#1'-
2269   because-it-contains-unknown-keys:-
2270   \seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq { 'and' } { ',' } { ',and-' } .
2271 }
2272 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_valid_key:n #1
2273 {
2274   \keys_if_exist:nnF { WithArrows / Global } { #1 }
2275   { \seq_put_right:Nn \l_tmpa_seq { #1 } }
2276 }
2277 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_valid_key:nn #1 #2
2278 {
2279   \keys_if_exist:nnF { WithArrows / Global } { #1 }
2280   { \seq_put_right:Nn \l_tmpa_seq { #1 } }
2281 }
2282 \@@_msg_new:nn { Key-already-defined }
2283 {
2284   Key-already-defined.\\
2285   The-key-'#1'-is-already-defined. \
2286   If-you-go-on,-your-instruction-\token_to_str:N\WithArrowsNewStyle\
2287   will-be-ignored.
2288 }

```

12.15 The options up and down

The options `up` and `down` are available for individual arrows. The corresponding code is given here. It is independent of the main code of the extension `witharrows`.

This code is the only part of the code of `witharrows` which uses the the Tikz library `calc`. That's why we have decided not to load by default this library. If it is not loaded, the user will have an error only when using the option `up` or the option `down`.

The keys `up` and `down` can be used with a value. This value is a list of pairs key-value specific to the options `up` and `down`.

- The key `radius` is the radius of the rounded corner of the arrow.
- The key `width` is the width of the horizontal part of the arrow. The corresponding dimension is `\l_@@_arrow_width_dim`. By convention, a value of 0 pt for `\l_@@_arrow_width_dim` means that the option `width` has been used with the special value `min` and a value of `\c_max_dim` means that it has been used with the value `max`.

```

2289 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / up-and-down }
2290 {
2291   radius .dim_set:N = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ,
2292   radius .value_required:n = true ,
2293   width .code:n =
2294     \str_case:nnF { #1 }

```

```

2295     {
2296         { min } { \dim_zero:N \l_@@_arrow_width_dim }
2297         { max } { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_arrow_width_dim \c_max_dim }
2298     }
2299     { \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_arrow_width_dim { #1 } } ,
2300     width .value_required:n = true ,
2301     unknown .code:n = \@@_error:n { Option~unknown~for~up-and-down }
2302 }
2303 \@@_msg_new:nn { Option~unknown~for~up-and-down }
2304 {
2305     Unknown~option.\\
2306     The~option`'\l_keys_key_str`~is~unknown.~\c_@@_option_ignored_str
2307 }

```

The token list `\c_@@_tikz_code_up_tl` is the value of `tikz-code` which will be used for an option `up`.

```

2308 (*LaTeX)
2309 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_up_tl
2310 {

```

First the case when the key `up` is used with `width=max` (that's the default behaviour).

```

2311 \dim_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_arrow_width_dim } = { \c_max_dim }
2312 {
2313     \draw [ rounded-corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ]
2314         let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2315         in (\p1) -- node
2316         {
2317             \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \x2 - \x1 }
2318             \begin{varwidth} \l_tmpa_dim
2319                 \narrowraged
2320                 #3
2321             \end{varwidth}
2322         }
2323         (\x2,\y1) -- (\p2) ;
2324     }

```

Now the case where the key `up` is used with `width=value` with `value` equal to `min` or a numeric value. The instruction `\path` doesn't draw anything: its aim is to compute the natural width of the label of the arrow. We can't use `\pgfextra` here because of the `\hbox_gset:Nn`.

```

2325 {
2326     \path
2327         let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2328         in node
2329         {

```

The length `\l_tmpa_dim` will be the maximal width of the box composed by the environment `{varwidth}`.

```

2330 \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim
2331     { \x2 - \x1 - \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim }
2332 \dim_compare:nNnF { \l_@@_arrow_width_dim } = { \c_zero_dim }
2333     {
2334         \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim
2335             { \dim_min:nn \l_tmpa_dim \l_@@_arrow_width_dim }
2336     }

```

Now, the length `\l_tmpa_dim` is computed. We can compose the label in the box `\g_tmpa_box`. We have to do a global affectation to be able to exit the node.

```

2337 \hbox_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_box
2338 {
2339     \begin{varwidth} \l_tmpa_dim

```

```

2340                               \narrowraged
2341                               #3
2342                         \end { varwidth }
2343
2344
2345
2346
2347
2348
2349
2350
2351
2352
2353
2354
2355
2356
2357
2358 
```

The length `\g_tmpa_dim` will be the width of the arrow (+ the radius of the corner).

```

2359 
```

$$\dim_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_arrow_width_dim } > { \c_zero_dim }$$

$$\{ \dim_gset_eq:NN \g_tmpa_dim \l_@@_arrow_width_dim \}$$

$$\{ \dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim { \box_wd:N \g_tmpa_box } \}$$

$$\dim_gadd:Nn \g_tmpa_dim \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim$$

$$} ;$$

$$\draw$$

$$\let \p1 = (#1) , \p2 = (#2)$$

$$\in (\x2-\g_tmpa_dim,\y1)$$

$$-- node { \box_use:N \g_tmpa_box }$$

$$(\x2-\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y1)$$

$$[rounded_corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim]$$

$$-| (\p2) ;$$

$$}$$

$$}$$

$$\}$$

$$\langle /LaTeX \rangle$$

$$\langle *plain-TeX \rangle$$

$$\tl_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_up_tl$$

$$\{$$

$$\dim_case:nnF \l_@@_arrow_width_dim$$

$$\{$$

$$\c_max_dim$$

$$\{$$

$$\draw [rounded_corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim]$$

$$\let \p1 = (#1) , \p2 = (#2)$$

$$\in (\p1) -- node { #3 } (\x2,\y1) -- (\p2) ;$$

$$}$$

$$\c_zero_dim$$

$$\{$$

$$\path node$$

$$\{$$

$$\hbox_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_box { #3 }$$

$$\dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim$$

$$\{ \box_wd:N \g_tmpa_box + \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim \}$$

$$} ;$$

$$\draw$$

$$\let \p1 = (#1) , \p2 = (#2)$$

$$\in (\x2-\g_tmpa_dim,\y1)$$

$$-- node { \box_use:N \g_tmpa_box }$$

$$(\x2-\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y1)$$

$$[rounded_corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim]$$

$$-| (\p2) ;$$

$$}$$

$$}$$

$$\{$$

$$\draw$$

$$\let \p1 = (#1) , \p2 = (#2)$$

$$\in (\x2 - \l_@@_arrow_width_dim - \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y1)$$

$$-- node { #3 } (\x2-\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y1)$$

$$[rounded_corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim]$$

$$-| (\p2) ;$$

$$}$$

$$\}$$

$$\langle /plain-TeX \rangle$$

The code for an arrow of type `down` is similar to the previous code (for an arrow of type `up`).

```

2397 
```

$$\langle *LaTeX \rangle$$

$$\tl_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_down_tl$$

```

2399  {
2400    \dim_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_arrow_width_dim } = { \c_max_dim }
2401    {
2402      \draw [ rounded-corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ]
2403      let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2404      in (\p1) -- (\x1,\y2) -- node
2405      {
2406        \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \x1 - \x2 }
2407        \begin{varwidth} \l_tmpa_dim
2408          \narrowraged
2409          #3
2410        \end{varwidth}
2411      }
2412      (\p2) ;
2413    }
2414    {
2415      \path
2416      let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2417      in node
2418      {
2419        \hbox_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_box
2420        {
2421          \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim

```

The 2 mm are for the tip of the arrow. We don't want the label of the arrow too close to the tip of arrow (we assume that to the tip of the arrow has its standard position, that is at the end of the arrow.).

```

2422          { \x1 - \x2 - \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim - 2 mm }
2423          \begin{varwidth} { \l_tmpa_dim }
2424            \narrowraged
2425            #3
2426          \end{varwidth}
2427        }
2428        \dim_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_arrow_width_dim } > { \c_zero_dim }
2429        { \dim_gset_eq:NN \g_tmpa_dim \l_@@_arrow_width_dim }
2430        { \dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim { \box_wd:N \g_tmpa_box } }
2431        \dim_gadd:Nn \g_tmpa_dim { \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim }
2432      } ;
2433
2434
2435 \draw
2436   let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2437   in (\p1)
2438   { [ rounded-corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ] -- (\x1,\y2) }
2439   -- (\x1-\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y2)
2440   -- node { \box_use:N \g_tmpa_box } (\x1-\g_tmpa_dim,\y2)
2441   -- ++ (-2mm,0) ;
2442 }
2443 
```

 %

 <(*plain-TeX)

```

2444 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_down_tl
2445 {
2446   \dim_case:nnF \l_@@_arrow_width_dim
2447   {
2448     \c_max_dim
2449     {
2450       \draw [ rounded-corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ]
2451       let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2452       in (\p1) -- (\x1,\y2) -- node { #3 } (\p2) ;
2453     }
2454     \c_zero_dim
2455     {
2456       \path node

```

```

2459 {
2460     \hbox_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_box { #3 }
2461     \dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim
2462         { \box_wd:N \g_tmpa_box + \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim }
2463     } ;
2464     \draw
2465         let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2466         in (\p1)
2467             { [ rounded_corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ] -- (\x1,\y2) }
2468             -- (\x1-\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y2)
2469             -- node { \box_use:N \g_tmpa_box } (\x1-\g_tmpa_dim,\y2)
2470             -- ++ (-2mm,0) ;
2471     }
2472 }
2473 {
2474     \draw
2475         let \p1 = ( #1 ) , \p2 = ( #2 )
2476         in (\p1)
2477             { [ rounded_corners = \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim ] -- (\x1,\y2) }
2478             -- (\x1-\l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y2)
2479             -- node { #3 }
2480                 (\x1 - \l_@@_arrow_width_dim - \l_@@_up_and_down_radius_dim,\y2)
2481             -- ++ (-2mm,0) ;
2482     }
2483 }
2484 </plain-TeX>

```

We recall that the options of the individual arrows are scanned twice. First, when are scanned when the command `\Arrow` occurs (we try to know whether the arrow is “individual”, etc.). That’s the first pass.

```

2485 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / FirstPass }
2486 {
2487     up .code:n = \@@_set_independent_bis: ,
2488     down .code:n = \@@_set_independent_bis: ,
2489     up .default:n = NoValue ,
2490     down .default:n = NoValue
2491 }

```

The options are scanned a second time when the arrow is actually drawn. That’s the second pass.

```

2492 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / SecondPass }
2493 {
2494     up .code:n =
2495         \str_if_empty:NT \l_@@_previous_key_str
2496         {
2497             \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { up }
2498             \cs_if_exist:NTF \tikz@library@calc@loaded
2499             {
2500                 \keys_set:no { WithArrows / up-and-down } \l_keys_value_tl
2501                 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 1

```

We have to set `\l_@@_wrap_lines_bool` to `false` because, otherwise, if the option `wrap_lines` is used at a higher level (global or environment), we will have a special affectation to `tikz-code` that will overwrite our affectation.

```

2502     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool

```

The main action occurs now. We change the value of the `tikz-code`.

```

2503     \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_tikz_code_tl \c_@@_tikz_code_up_tl
2504     }
2505     { \@@_error:n { calc-not-loaded } }
2506     } ,
2507     down .code:n =
2508         \str_if_empty:NT \l_@@_previous_key_str
2509         {

```

```

2510     \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { down }
2511     \cs_if_exist:NTF \tikz@library@calc@loaded
2512     {
2513         \keys_set:no { WithArrows / up-and-down } \l_keys_value_tl
2514         \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 1
2515         \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool
2516         \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_tikz_code_tl \c_@@_tikz_code_down_tl
2517     }
2518     { \@@_error:n { calc-not-loaded } }
2519 }
2520 }

2521 \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { down }
2522 \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { up }

```

12.16 The error messages of the package

```

2523 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_err_newline_at_the_end:
2524 {
2525     \@@_error:n { newline-at-the-end }
2526     \cs_gset:Npn \@@_err_newline_at_the_end: { }
2527 }

2528 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_err_amsmath_not_loaded:
2529 {
2530     \@@_error:n { amsmath-not-loaded }
2531     \cs_gset:Npn \@@_err_amsmath_not_loaded: { \@@_info:n { amsmath-not-loaded } }
2532 }

2533 \bool_if:NTF \c_@@_messages_for_Overleaf_bool
2534 {
2535     \str_const:Nn \c_@@_available_keys_str { }
2536 }
2537 \str_const:Nn \c_@@_available_keys_str
2538     { For-a-list-of-the-available-keys,-type-H-<return>. }

2539 \@@_msg_new:nn { calc-not-loaded }
2540 {
2541     calc-not-loaded.\\
2542     You~can't~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_str'~because~you~don't~have~loaded~the~
2543     TikZ~library~'calc'.~You~should~add~'\token_to_str:N\usetikzlibrary{calc}'~
2544     ~in~the~preamble~of~your~document.~\\
2545     \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2546 }

2547 \str_new:N \l_witharrows_body_str

```

The following commands must *not* be protected since they will be used in error messages.

```

2548 \cs_new:Npn \@@_potential_body_i:
2549 {
2550     \str_if_empty:NF \l_witharrows_body_str
2551         { \\ If~you~want~to~see~the~body~of~the~environment,~type-H-<return>. }
2552 }

2553 \cs_new:Npn \@@_potential_body_ii:
2554 {
2555     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_witharrows_body_str
2556         { No~further~help~available }
2557         {
2558             The~body~of~your~environment~was:\\
2559             \l_witharrows_body_str
2560         }
2561 }

2562 \@@_msg_new:nn { DispWithArrows-with-tagging }
2563 {
2564     You~can't~use~\{DispWithArrows\}~since~tagging~is~active.\\

```

```

2565     That~error~is~fatal.
2566 }
2567 \str_const:Nn \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2568 { If~you~go~on,~this~option~will~be~ignored. }
2569 \str_const:Nn \c_@@_command_ignored_str
2570 { If~you~go~on,~this~command~will~be~ignored. }
2571 (*LaTeX)
2572 \@@_msg_new:nn { amsmath~not~loaded }
2573 {
2574   amsmath~not~loaded.\\
2575   You~can't~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_str'~because~the~
2576   package~'amsmath'~has~not~been~loaded.\\
2577   If~you~go~on,~this~option~will~be~ignored~in~the~rest~
2578   of~the~document.
2579 }
2580 (/LaTeX)
2581 \@@_msg_new:nn { Bad~value~for~replace~brace~by }
2582 {
2583   Incorrect~value.\\
2584   Bad~value~for~the~option~'\l_keys_key_str'.~The~value~must~begin~
2585   with~an~extensible~left~delimiter.~The~possible~values~are:~,~,
2586   \token_to_str:N \{,~,~\token_to_str:N \lbrace,~
2587   \token_to_str:N \lbrack,~,~\token_to_str:N \lgroup,~
2588   \token_to_str:N \langle,~,~\token_to_str:N \lmoustache,~
2589   \token_to_str:N \lfloor,~and~\token_to_str:N \lceil
2590   (and~\token_to_str:N \lvert,~and~\token_to_str:N \lVert\~
2591   if~amsmath~or~unicode~math~is~loaded~in~LaTeX).\\
2592   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2593 }
2594 \@@_msg_new:nn { option~of~cr~negative }
2595 {
2596   Bad~value.\\
2597   The~argument~of~the~command~\token_to_str:N\\~
2598   should~be~positive~in~the~row~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\\
2599   of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.\\
2600   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2601 }
2602 \@@_msg_new:nn { omit~probably~used }
2603 {
2604   Strange~problem.\\
2605   Maybe~you~have~used~a~command~\\
2606   \token_to_str:N \omit~in~the~line~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\\
2607   (or~another~line)~of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.\\
2608   You~can~go~on~but~you~may~have~others~errors.
2609 }
2610 (*LaTeX)
2611 \@@_msg_new:nnn { newline~at~the~end }
2612 {
2613   Incorrect~end.\\
2614   The~environments~of~witharrows~(\{WithArrows\}~and~\\
2615   \{DispWithArrows\})~should~not~end~by~\token_to_str:N \\.\\
2616   However,~you~can~go~on~for~this~time.~No~similar~error~will~be~
2617   raised~in~this~document.
2618   \@@_potential_body_i:
2619 }
2620 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }
2621 (/LaTeX)
2622 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Invalid~option~format }
2623 {
2624   Invalidate~value.\\
2625   The~key~'format'~should~contain~only~letters~r,~c~and~l~and~
```

```

2626 must-not-be-empty.\\
2627 \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2628 \@@_potential_body_i:
2629 }
2630 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2631 \@@_msg_new:nnn { invalid-key-o }
2632 {
2633 Invalid-use-of-a-key.\\
2634 The-key-'o'~for~individual~arrows~can~be~used~only~in~mode~
2635 'group'~or~in~mode~'groups'.\\\
2636 \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2637 \@@_potential_body_i:
2638 }
2639 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2640 \@@_msg_new:nnn { o~arrow~with~wrap-lines }
2641 {
2642 Arrow~of~type~'o'~with~'wrap-lines'. \\\
2643 You~can't~use~arrows~of~type~'o'~when~
2644 'wrap-lines'~is~in~force.\\\
2645 If~you~go~on,~these~arrows~will~be~ignored.
2646 \@@_potential_body_i:
2647 }
2648 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2649 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Value~for~a~key }
2650 {
2651 Misuse~of~a~key.\\
2652 The~key~'\l_keys_key_str'~should~be~used~without~value. \\\
2653 However,~you~can~go~on~for~this~time.
2654 \@@_potential_body_i:
2655 }
2656 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2657 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown~option~in~Arrow }
2658 {
2659 Unknown~option.\\\
2660 The~key~'\l_keys_key_str'~is~unknown~for~the~command~
2661 \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\ in~the~row~
2662 \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\ of~your~environment~
2663 \{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \l_tmpr_a_str \\\
2664 \c_@@_option_ignored_str \\
2665 \c_@@_available_keys_str
2666 }
2667 {
2668 The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2669 \seq_use:Nnnn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq {~and~} {,~} {~and~}.
2670 }

2671 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown~option~WithArrows }
2672 {
2673 Unknown~option.\\\
2674 The~key~'\l_keys_key_str'~is~unknown~in~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\\
2675 \c_@@_option_ignored_str \\
2676 \c_@@_available_keys_str
2677 }
2678 {
2679 The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2680 \seq_use:Nnnn \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq {~and~} {,~} {~and~}.
2681 }

2682 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown~option~DispWithArrows }
2683 {
2684 Unknown~option.\\\
2685 The~key~'\l_keys_key_str'~is~unknown~in~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\\
2686 \c_@@_option_ignored_str \\

```

```

2687     \c_@@_available_keys_str
2688 }
2689 {
2700     The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2701     \seq_use:Nnnn \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq {~and~} {,~} {~and~}.
2702 }
2703 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown~option~WithArrowsOptions }
2704 {
2705     Unknown~option.\\
2706     The~key~'\l_keys_key_str'~is~unknown~in~
2707     \token_to_str:N \WithArrowsOptions. \\
2708     \c_@@_option_ignored_str \\
2709     \c_@@_available_keys_str
2710 }
2711 {
2712     The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2713     \seq_use:Nnnn \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq {~and~} {,~} {~and~}.
2714 }
2715 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown~option~Arrow~in~code~after }
2716 {
2717     Unknown~option.\\
2718     The~key~'\l_keys_key_str'~is~unknown~in~
2719     \token_to_str:N \Arrow\ in~code~after. \\
2720     \c_@@_option_ignored_str \\
2721     \c_@@_available_keys_str
2722 }
2723 {
2724     The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2725     \seq_use:Nnnn \l_@@_options_Arrow_code_after_seq {~and~} {,~} {~and~}.
2726 }
2727 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Too~many~columns~in~WithArrows }
2728 {
2729     Too~many~columns.\\
2730     Your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~has~\int_use:N
2731     \l_@@_nb_cols_int\ columns~and~you~try~to~use~one~more.~.
2732     Maybe~you~have~forgotten~a~\c_backslash_str\c_backslash_str.~.
2733     If~you~really~want~to~use~more~columns~(after~the~arrows)~you~should~use~
2734     the~option~'more~columns'~at~a~global~level~or~for~an~environment. \\
2735     However,~you~can~go~one~for~this~time.
2736     \@@_potential_body_i:
2737 }
2738 {
2739     \@@_potential_body_ii:
2740 }
2741 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Too~many~columns~in~DispWithArrows }
2742 {
2743     Too~many~columns.\\
2744     Your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~has~\int_use:N
2745     \l_@@_nb_cols_int\ columns~and~you~try~to~use~one~more.~.
2746     Maybe~you~have~forgotten~a~\c_backslash_str\c_backslash_str\
2747     at~the~end~of~row~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int. \\
2748     This~error~is~fatal.
2749     \@@_potential_body_i:
2750 }
2751 {
2752     \@@_potential_body_ii:
2753 }
2754 \@@_msg_new:nn { Negative~jump }
2755 {
2756     Incorrect~value.\\
2757     You~can't~use~a~negative~value~for~the~option~'jump'~of~command~
2758     \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\
2759     in~the~row~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\
2760     of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.~.
2761     You~can~create~an~arrow~going~backwards~with~the~option~'~-~of~Tikz. \\
2762     \c_@@_option_ignored_str

```

```

2749 }
2750 \@@_msg_new:nn { new-group-without-groups }
2751 {
2752 Misuse~of~a~key.\\
2753 You~can't~use~the~option~'new-group'~for~the~command~\\
2754 \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\\
2755 because~you~are~not~in~'groups'~mode.~Try~to~use~the~option~\\
2756 'groups'~in~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.~\\
2757 \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2758 }

2759 \@@_msg_new:nnn
2760 { Too~few~lines~for~an~arrow }
2761 {
2762 Impossible~arrow.\\
2763 Line~\l_@@_input_line_str\\
2764 :~an~arrow~specified~in~the~row~\int_use:N~\l_@@_initial_int\\
2765 of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~can't~be~drawn~\\
2766 because~it~arrives~after~the~last~row~of~the~environment.~\\
2767 If~you~go~on,~this~arrow~will~be~ignored.
2768 \@@_potential_body_i:
2769 }
2770 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2771 \@@_msg_new:nn { o~arrow~with~no~arrow~under }
2772 {
2773 Problem~with~the~key~'o'.\\
2774 Line~\l_@@_input_line_str\\
2775 :~there~is~no~arrow~'under'~your~arrow~of~type~'o'.\\
2776 If~you~go~on,~this~arrow~won't~be~drawn.
2777 }

2778 \@@_msg_new:nnn { WithArrows~outside~math~mode }
2779 {
2780 You~are~outside~math~mode.\\
2781 The~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~should~be~used~only~in~math~mode~\\
2782 like~the~environment~\{aligned\}~of~amsmath.~\\
2783 Nevertheless,~you~can~go~on.
2784 \@@_potential_body_i:
2785 }
2786 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2787 \@@_msg_new:nnn { DispWithArrows~in~math~mode }
2788 {
2789 You~are~in~math~mode.\\
2790 The~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~should~be~used~only~outside~math~\\
2791 mode~like~the~environments~\{align\}~and~\{align*\}~of~amsmath.~\\
2792 This~error~is~fatal.
2793 \@@_potential_body_i:
2794 }
2795 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2796 \@@_msg_new:nn { Incompatible~options~in~Arrow }
2797 {
2798 Incompatible~options.\\
2799 You~try~to~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_str'~but~\\
2800 this~option~is~incompatible~or~redundant~with~the~option~\\
2801 '\l_@@_previous_key_str'~set~in~the~same~command~\\
2802 \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str.~\\
2803 \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2804 }

2805 \@@_msg_new:nn { Incompatible~options }
2806 {
2807 Incompatible~options.\\
2808 You~try~to~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_str'~but~\\
2809 this~option~is~incompatible~or~redundant~with~the~option~\\

```

```

2810  '\l_@@_previous_key_str'~set~in~the~same~command~
2811  \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_code_after_bool
2812  {
2813      \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\  

2814      in~the~code~after~of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}
2815  }. \\ 
2816  \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2817 }

2818 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Arrow-not-in-last-column }
2819 {
2820     Bad~use~of~\l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str.\\
2821     You~should~use~the~command~\l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\  

2822     only~in~the~last~column~(column~\int_use:N\l_@@_nb_cols_int)~
2823     in~the~row~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\  

2824     of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.\\
2825     However~you~can~go~on~for~this~time.
2826     \@@_potential_body_i:
2827 }
2828 { \@@_potential_body_ii: }

2829 \@@_msg_new:nn { Wrong-line-in-Arrow }
2830 {
2831     Wrong~line.\\
2832     The~specification~of~line~'#1'~you~use~in~the~command~
2833     \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\  

2834     in~the~'code~after'~of~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~doesn't~exist. \\
2835     \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2836 }

2837 \@@_msg_new:nn { Both-lines-are-equal }
2838 {
2839     Both~lines~are~equal.\\
2840     In~the~'code~after'~of~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~you~try~to~
2841     draw~an~arrow~going~to~itself~from~the~line~'#1'.~This~is~not~possible. \\
2842     \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2843 }

2844 \@@_msg_new:nn { Wrong-line-specification-in-MultiArrow }
2845 {
2846     Wrong~line~specification.\\
2847     The~specification~of~line~'#1'~doesn't~exist. \\
2848     If~you~go~on,~it~will~be~ignored~for~\token_to:str:N \MultiArrow.
2849 }

2850 \@@_msg_new:nn { Too-small-specification-for-MultiArrow }
2851 {
2852     Too~small~specification.\\
2853     The~specification~of~lines~you~gave~to~\token_to:str:N \MultiArrow\  

2854     is~too~small:~you~need~at~least~two~lines. \\
2855     \c_@@_command_ignored_str
2856 }

2857 \@@_msg_new:nn { Not-allowed-in-DispWithArrows }
2858 {
2859     Forbidden~command.\\
2860     The~command~\token_to:str:N #1
2861     is~allowed~only~in~the~last~column~
2862     (column~\int_use:N\l_@@_nb_cols_int)~of~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\
2863     \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2864 }

2865 \@@_msg_new:nn { Not-allowed-in-WithArrows }
2866 {
2867     Forbidden~command.\\
2868     The~command~\token_to:str:N #1 is~not~allowed~in~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~
2869     (it's~allowed~in~the~last~column~of~\{DispWithArrows\}). \\
2870     \c_@@_option_ignored_str

```

```

2871   }
2872 (*LaTeX)
2873 \@@_msg_new:nn { tag*~without~amsmath }
2874 {
2875   amsmath-not-loaded.\\
2876   We-can't-use~\token_to_str:N>tag*~because~you~haven't~loaded~amsmath~
2877   (or~mathtools). \\%
2878   If~you~go~on,~the~command~\token_to_str:N>tag
2879   will~be~used~instead.
2880 }
2881 \@@_msg_new:nn { Multiple~tags }
2882 {
2883   Multiple~tags.\\
2884   You~can't~use~twice~the~command~\token_to_str:N>tag\\
2885   in~a~line~of~the~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\%
2886   If~you~go~on,~the~tag~'#1'~will~be~used.
2887 }
2888 \@@_msg_new:nn { Multiple~labels }
2889 {
2890   Multiple~labels.\\
2891   Normally,~we~can't~use~the~command~\token_to_str:N\label\\
2892   twice~in~a~line~of~the~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\%
2893   However,~you~can~go~on.~%
2894   \IfPackageLoadedT { showlabels }
2895   { However,~only~the~last~label~will~be~shown~by~showlabels.~}
2896   If~you~don't~want~to~see~this~message~again,~you~can~use~the~option~%
2897   'allow-multiple-labels'~at~the~global~or~environment~level.
2898 }
2899 \@@_msg_new:nn { Multiple~labels~with~cleveref }
2900 {
2901   Multiple~labels.\\
2902   Since~you~use~cleveref,~you~can't~use~the~command~\token_to_str:N\label\\
2903   twice~in~a~line~of~the~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\%
2904   If~you~go~on,~you~may~have~undefined~references.
2905 }
2906 
```

\@@_msg_new:nn { Inexistent~v-node }

```

2907 {
2908   There~is~a~problem.\\
2909   Maybe~you~have~put~a~command~\token_to_str:N\cr\\
2910   instead~of~a~command~\token_to_str:N\\~-at~the~end~of~%
2911   the~row~\l_tmpa_int\\
2912   of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\%
2913   This~error~is~fatal.
2914 }
2915 
```

The following error when the user tries to use the option `xoffset` in mode `group` or `groups` (in fact, it's possible to use the option `xoffset` if there is only *one* arrow: of course, the option `group` and `groups` do not make sense in this case but, maybe, the option was set in a `\WithArrowsOptions`).

```

2916 \@@_msg_new:nn { Option-xoffset-forbidden }
2917 {
2918   Incorrect~key.\\
2919   You~can't~use~the~option~'xoffset'~in~the~command~%
2920   \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str~in~the~row~\int_use:N~\g_@@_line_int~%
2921   of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~%
2922   because~you~are~using~the~option~%
2923   ' \int_compare:nNnTF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int } = { 7 } %
2924   { group } %
2925   { groups } '.~It's~possible~for~an~independent~arrow~or~if~there~is~%
2926   only~one~arrow. \\%
2927   \c_@@_option_ignored_str 
```

```

2928 }
2929 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Duplicate~name }
2930 {
2931   Duplicate~name.\\
2932   The~name-'l_keys_value_tl'~is~already~used~and~you~shouldn't~use~
2933   the~same~environment~name~twice.~You~can~go~on,~but,~
2934   maybe,~you~will~have~incorrect~results.~\\
2935   For~a~list~of~the~names~already~used,~type~H~<return>.~\\
2936   If~you~don't~want~to~see~this~message~again,~use~the~option~
2937   'allow-duplicate-names'.
2938 }
2939 {
2940   The~names~already~defined~in~this~document~are:~
2941   \seq_use:Nnnn \g_@@_names_seq { ,~ } { ,~ } { ~and~ }.
2942 }

2943 \@@_msg_new:nn { Invalid~specification~for~MultiArrow }
2944 {
2945   Invalid~specification.\\
2946   The~specification~of~rows~for~\token_to_str:N\MultiArrow\
2947   (i.e.~#1)~is~invalid.~\\
2948   \c_@@_command_ignored_str
2949 }

2950 <*plain-TeX>
2951 \catcode `@ = 12
2952 \ExplSyntaxOff
2953 </plain-TeX>

```

13 History

Changes between 2.8 and 2.9

Argument <...> for the command \Arrow in the class Beamer.

Changes between 2.7 and 2.8

New key right-overlap

Changes between 2.6b and 2.7

Correction of a bug: when the key wrap-lines was in force, the content of the annotations was not “flush left” by default as it should be (but justified).

Changes between 2.6 and 2.6a (and 2.6b)

Replacement of \hbox_unpack_clear:N by \hbox_unpack_drop:N since \hbox_unpack_clear:N is now deprecated in L3.

Version 2.6d: correction of a bug (cf. question 628461 on TeX StackExchange).

Changes between 2.5 and 2.5.1

Correction of the erroneous programmation of the nodes aliases.

Changes between 2.4 and 2.5

Arrows of type o which are over other arrows.
witharrows now requires and loads varwidth

Changes between 2.3 and 2.4

Correction of a bug with {DispWithArrows} : cf. question 535989 on TeX StackExchange.

Changes between 2.2 and 2.3

Two options for the arrows of type up and down: `width` and `radius`.

Changes between 2.1 and 2.2

Addition of `\normalbaselines` at the beginning of `\@_post_halign::`.

The warning for an environment ending by `\`` has been transformed in `error`.

Changes between 2.0 and 2.1

Option `max-length-of-arrow`.

Validation with regular expression for the first argument of `\MultiArrow`.

Changes between 1.18 and 2.0

A version of `witharrows` is available for plain-TeX.

Changes between 1.17 and 1.18

New option `<...>` for `{DispWithArrows}`.

Option `subequations`.

Warning when `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}` ends by `\``.

No space before an environment `{DispWithArrows}` if we are at the beginning of a `{minipage}`.

Changes between 1.16 and 1.17

Option `format`.

Changes between 1.15 and 1.16

Option `no-arrows`

The behaviour of `{DispWithArrows}` after an `\item` of a LaTeX list has been changed : no vertical is added.

The previous behaviour can be restored with the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`.

A given name can no longer be used for two distinct environments. However, it's possible to deactivate this control with the option `allow-duplicate-names`.

Changes between 1.14 and 1.15

Option `new-group` to start a new group of arrows (only available when the environment is composed with the option `groups`).

Tikz externalization is now deactivated in the environments of the extension `witharrows`.⁴¹

Changes between 1.13 and 1.14

New options `up` and `down` for the arrows.

Replacement of some options `O { }` in commands and environments defined with `xparse` by `! O { }` (a recent version of `xparse` introduced the specifier `!` and modified the default behaviour of the last optional arguments: <http://www.texdev.net/2018/04/21/xparse-optional-arguments-at-the-end>).

Modification of the code of `\WithArrowsNewStyle` following a correction of a bug in `l3keys` in the version of `l3kernel` of 2019/01/28.

New error message `Inexistent-v-node` to avoid a `pgf` error.

The error `Option incompatible with 'group(s)'` was suppressed in the version 1.12 but this was a mistake since this error is used with the option `xoffset` at the local level. The error is put back.

⁴¹Before this version, there was an error when using `witharrows` with Tikz externalization. In any case, it's not possible to externalize the Tikz elements constructed by `witharrows` because they use the options `overlay` and `remember picture`.

Changes between 1.12 and 1.13

Options `start-adjust`, `end-adjust` and `adjust`.

This version is not strictly compatible with previous ones. To restore the behaviour of the previous versions, one has to use the option `adjust` with the value 0 pt:

```
\WithArrowsOptions{adjust = 0pt}
```

Changes between 1.11 and 1.12

New command `\tagnextline`.

New option `tagged-lines`.

An option of position (`ll`, `lr`, `rl`, `rr` or `i`) is now allowed at the local level even if the option `group` or the option `groups` is used at the global or environment level.

Compatibility of `{DispWithArrows}` with `\qedhere` of `amsthm`.

Compatibility with the packages `refcheck`, `showlabels` and `listlbls`.

The option `\AllowLineWithoutAmpersand` is deprecated because lines without ampersands are now always allowed.

Changes between 1.10 and 1.11

New commands `\WithArrowsNewStyle` and `\WithArrowsRightX`.

Changes between 1.9 and 1.10

If the option `wrap-lines` is used, the option “`text width`” of Tikz is still active: if the value given to “`text width`” is lower than the width computed by `wrap-lines`, this value is used to wrap the lines.

The option `wrap-lines` is now fully compatible with the class option `leqno`.

Correction of a bug: `\nointerlineskip` and `\makebox[.6\linewidth]{}{}` should be inserted in `{DispWithArrows}` only in vertical mode.

Changes between 1.8 and 1.9

New option `wrap-lines` for the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`.

Changes between 1.7 and 1.8

The numbers and tags of the environment `{DispWithArrows}` are now compatible with all the major LaTeX packages concerning references (`autonum`, `cleveref`, `fancyref`, `hyperref`, `prettyref`, `refstyle`, `typedref` and `varioref`) and with the options `showonlyrefs` and `showmanualltags` of `mathtools`.

Changes between 1.6 and 1.7

New environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`.

Changes between versions 1.5 and 1.6

The code has been improved to be faster and the Tikz library `calc` is no longer required.

A new option `name` is available for the environments `{WithArrows}`.

Changes between versions 1.4 and 1.5

The Tikz code used to draw the arrows can be changed with the option `tikz-code`.

Two new options `code-before` and `code-after` have been added at the environment level.

A special version of `\Arrow` is available in `code-after` in order to draw arrows in nested environments.

A command `\MultiArrow` is available in `code-after` to draw arrows of other shapes.

Changes between versions 1.3 and 1.4

The package `footnote` is no longer loaded by default. Instead, two options `footnote` and `footnotehyper` have been added. In particular, `witharrows` becomes compatible with `beamer`.

Changes between versions 1.2 and 1.3

New options `ygap` and `ystart` for fine tuning.

Changes between versions 1.1 and 1.2

The package `witharrows` can now be loaded without having loaded previously `tikz` and the libraries `arrow.meta` and `bending` (this extension and these libraries are loaded silently by `witharrows`).

New option `groups` (with a *s*)

Changes between versions 1.0 and 1.1

Option for the command `\|` and option `interline`

Compatibility with `\usetikzlibrary{babel}`

Possibility of nested environments `{WithArrows}`

Contents

1 Options for the shape of the arrows	2
2 Numbers of columns	6
3 Precise positioning of the arrows	7
4 The option 'o' for individual arrows	9
5 The options 'up' and 'down' for individual arrows	10
6 Comparison with the environment {aligned}	11
7 Arrows in nested environments	13
8 Arrows from outside environments {WithArrows}	16
9 The environment {DispWithArrows}	17
9.1 The option <code><...></code> of <code>DispWithArrows</code>	22
10 Advanced features	23
10.1 Utilisation with Beamer	23
10.2 Use with plain-TeX	23
10.3 The option <code>tikz-code</code> : how to change the shape of the arrows	23
10.4 The command <code>\WithArrowsNewStyle</code>	24
10.5 The key <code>right-overlap</code>	25
10.6 Vertical positioning of the arrows	25
10.7 Footnotes in the environments of <code>witharrows</code>	26
10.8 Option <code>no-arrows</code>	27
10.9 Note for the users of AUCTeX	27
10.10 Note for the developpers	27

11 Examples	28
11.1 \MoveEqLeft	28
11.2 A command \DoubleArrow	28
11.3 Modifying the shape of the nodes	28
11.4 Examples with the option tikz-code	29
11.4.1 Example 1	29
11.4.2 Example 2	30
11.4.3 Example 3	31
11.5 Automatic numbered loop	32
12 Implementation	33
12.1 Declaration of the package and extensions loaded	33
12.2 The packages footnote and footnotehyper	34
12.3 The class option leqno	36
12.4 Collecting options	36
12.5 Some technical definitions	37
12.6 Variables	39
12.7 The definition of the options	42
12.8 The command \Arrow	50
12.9 The environments {WithArrows} and {DispWithArrows}	52
12.9.1 Code before the \halign	52
12.9.2 The construction of the preamble of the \halign	55
12.9.3 The environment {WithArrows}	58
12.9.4 After the construction of the \halign	59
12.9.5 The command of end of row	61
12.9.6 The environment {DispWithArrows}	64
12.10 The commands \tag, \notag, \label, \tagnextline and \qedhere for {DispWithArrows}	69
12.11 We draw the arrows	72
12.11.1 The command update_x	81
12.11.2 We draw the arrows of type o	82
12.12 The command \Arrow in code-after	84
12.13 The command \MultiArrow in code-after	86
12.14 The command \WithArrowsNewStyle	88
12.15 The options up and down	89
12.16 The error messages of the package	94
13 History	101